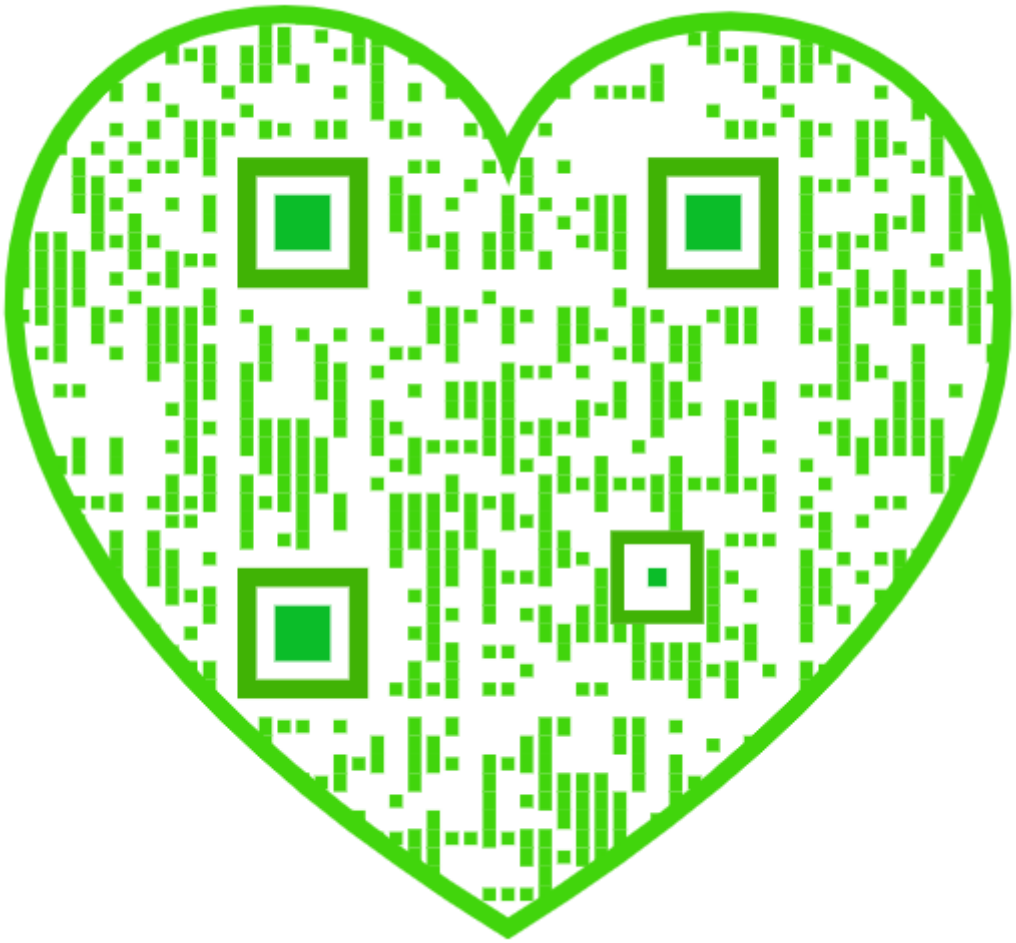
AMERICAN HISTORY

SECOND BOOK

REVISED AND ENLARGED

SPECIAL EDITION

PERRY AND PRICE

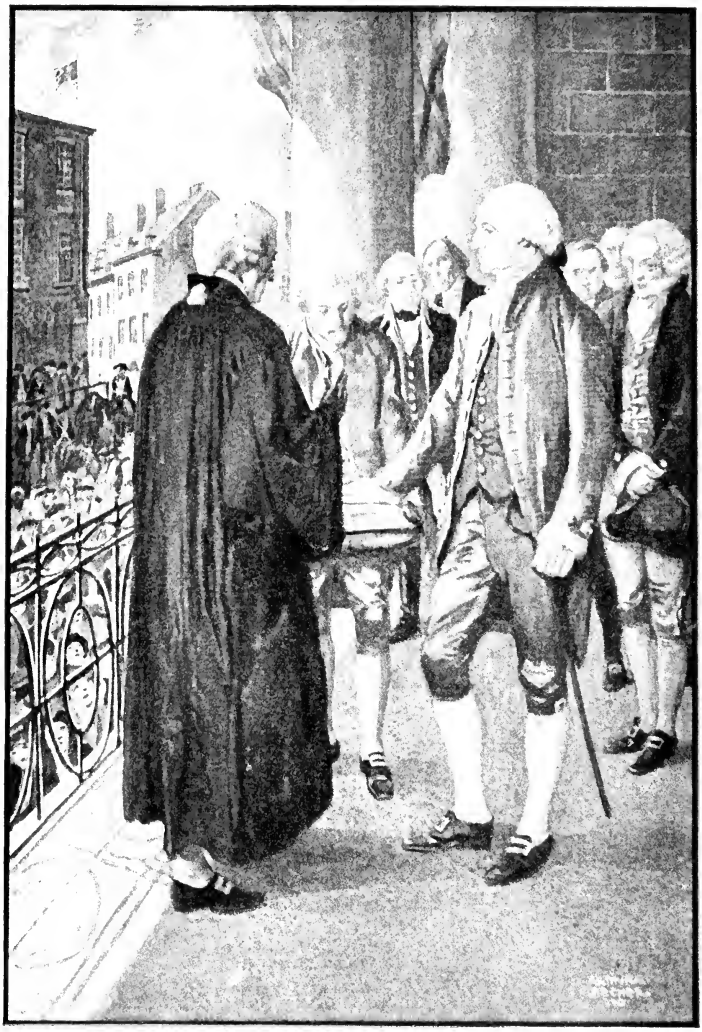


Class _____

Book _____

Copyright No. _____

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.



AMERICAN HISTORY

SECOND BOOK

(1783 TO THE PRESENT TIME)

BY

ARTHUR C. PERRY, JR., PH.D.

DISTRICT SUPERINTENDENT OF SCHOOLS
NEW YORK CITY

AND

GERTRUDE A. PRICE

TEACHER IN PUBLIC SCHOOL
NEW YORK CITY

REVISED AND ENLARGED
SPECIAL EDITION

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY
NEW YORK CINCINNATI CHICAGO
BOSTON ATLANTA

Copyright, 1914, 1919, by
ARTHUR C. PERRY, JR., and GERTRUDE A. PRICE

Copyright, 1914, in Great Britain

Am. Hist. Second Book. Rev. & Enl. Sp. Ed.

W. P. 1

©CLA535191

PREFACE

THE general practice of our elementary schools is to study the subject of American History in two cycles. This volume is the second of a two-book series intended to serve as textbooks for pupils in the first cycle of their study, and to cover two years' work. Each book, however, is so planned that it can be used independently of the other.

The books aim to introduce the pupil to the history of his country in accordance with accepted pedagogical method. It is not their purpose to give the student a detailed and comprehensive study of the philosophy of history, or to appeal especially to the judgment and those other faculties whose fuller development comes with adolescence. The books are deliberately organized, as regards both subject matter and vocabulary, on lines of adaptability to children of ten or twelve years of age.

The interest of the child must be aroused — and his interest at this age is not in the philosophy of cause and effect. His interest is in the drama of events rather than in their causal sequence: it is in adventure, not politics; in heroism, not statesmanship; in deeds, not philosophy; in people, not statistics. Later in his school career he may turn toward

the technical and philosophical phases of the subject; but to arouse his present enthusiasm we must appeal to his immediate interests, and these are elemental, simple, almost barbaric.

Hence these books attempt to enlist the interest of the pupil in the stirring narrative of our country's progress, and to give him such narrative in plenty. That the tastes of the pupil at this age are of an elemental quality is not a reason for reducing the subject matter in quantity. Therefore, it has not been the aim of the authors to write a "brief" book.

The arrangement of the subject matter is on a three-fold plan. Each chapter has a central thought about which important events are grouped in narrative form. Following the narrative there is a summary for careful study; and then comes a concise statement of the fact or facts that seem most vital. It is suggested that in using this volume as a textbook, the pupil *read* the narrative, *study* the summary, and *memorize* the facts.

For convenience in review study, the facts to be memorized are brought together in one series in an appendix. Whether the student is obliged to leave school without further formal study of history, or whether he is privileged to continue his schooling through the second-cycle study of the subject, this series of facts, thoroughly memorized, will serve as a background and setting for all his future study of history, civics, and politics. To this skeleton resumé

he may refer all the events of history, placing them properly both as to chronological order and as to causal relations.

Other appendixes contain reference material for the teacher's use. The pronunciation of difficult words is indicated in the Index.

The selection from "Uncle Remus," by Joel Chandler Harris, on page 82, is used by permission of the publishers, D. Appleton and Company. The selection from "The High Tide at Gettysburg," on page 156, is used through the courtesy of the author, Will Henry Thompson. The verses on "America," page 257, are reprinted by permission from "The Poems of Henry Van Dyke," published by Charles Scribner's Sons.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.	The Uniting of the States	1
II.	Democracy	25
III.	Progress and Invention	51
IV.	Slavery	77
V.	Secession	89
VI.	The Civil War	115
VII.	The Turning of the Tide	139
VIII.	Reconstruction	159
IX.	The Great West	177
X.	Spanish War	205
XI.	Expansion	223
XII.	Life of To-day	237
XIII.	Recalling the Past	259
XIV.	The World War	279
Appendix A.	Facts to be Memorized	303
Appendix B.	Reference Table of the States	307
Appendix C.	Reference Table of Presidents and Vice Presidents	308
Appendix D.	Reference List of Important Events in Chronological Order	309
Appendix E.	Constitution of the United States	313
Index		333

AMERICAN HISTORY

CHAPTER I

THE UNITING OF THE STATES

"WITH a heart full of love and gratitude I now take my leave of you, most devoutly wishing that your latter days may be as prosperous and happy as your former ones have been glorious and honorable." Thus, with shaking voice, spoke the great general as he bade farewell to the officers of his army. One after another they clasped his hand in silent devotion. It was he who had guided them so faithfully through eight long years of war. It was he who had led them to the final victory. For this was Washington, the commander in chief of the Continental army.

This was Washington, who, when scarcely more than a boy, was known throughout the Virginia colony as a skillful public surveyor. Day after day his work took him into the forest, where he learned much of woodcraft, and where he learned to know the Indians and their ways. He it was that the governor sent into the

Washington

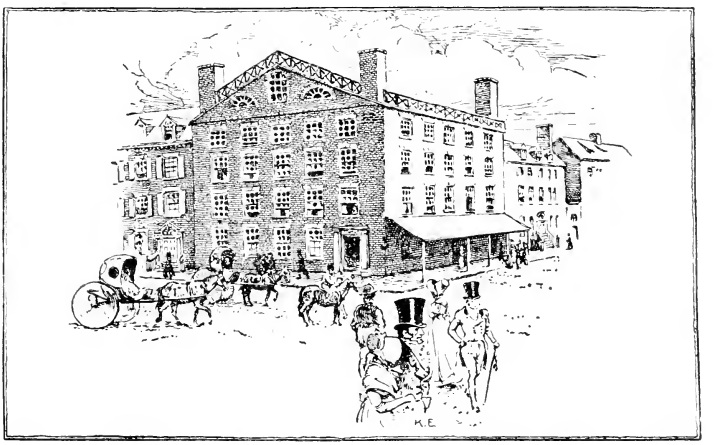
Ohio country, in 1753, to warn the French not to trespass on English territory. Then, two years later, when soldiers were sent against the French and their Indian allies, Washington was made first aid to Braddock, the English general. After Braddock was defeated, it was Washington, with his knowledge of the woods and the Indian methods of warfare, who led the English retreat.

This was Washington, who, in 1775, had been made commander in chief of the American army that gathered to defend the colonies against the mother country. He directed it in its campaign about New York and across New Jersey. With his ragged troops, he braved the Delaware in midwinter and captured Trenton. He worked out the plan that led to Burgoyne's surrender. He suffered with his heroic soldiers at Valley Forge. He forced the surrender of Cornwallis at Yorktown. A leading historian says, "It is very doubtful if without Washington the struggle for independence would have succeeded as it did. Other men were important; he was indispensable."

And now, in December, 1783, the officers of the army had gathered in the city of New York to exchange their last farewells, for their services were no longer needed. A treaty of peace had been signed at Paris in September, and in November the last of the British troops had left the city. The meeting was held in Fraunces' Tavern, in those days a favorite place for

Fraunces' Tavern

public gatherings, and to-day preserved as one of the precious relics of bygone colonial times. After the good-bys had been said, the officers left for their homes, some to go to New England, some to go south, some for near-by New Jersey or New York.



Fraunces' Tavern in 1783

Washington presented himself to Congress and resigned his office, saying, "I here offer my commission, and take my leave of all the employments of public life." He then journeyed on to Mount Vernon, his quiet plantation home on the west bank of the Potomac.

By the Treaty of Paris, 1783, which closed the American Revolution, the United States was awarded a territory larger than the combined area of the present countries of France, Spain, Great Britain,

and Germany. It might be supposed that the new Ship of State thus launched would have fair weather and smooth sailing. On the contrary, the following five or six years of our history have been called the Critical Period, and we do not have to look far to see the reason.

Treaty of 1783

In the first place, the very size of the country made it difficult to build up a strong nation. Hundreds of miles separate the states of Massachusetts and Georgia, and those hundreds of miles meant far more in those days than they do now. Even the trip from Boston to New York was a great undertaking. It is now made daily by thousands of people, and requires but five or six hours. In colonial days one had to spend a week on a trying and dangerous journey by coach. So it is not strange that the people of Massachusetts did not feel very closely related to the people of Georgia, or even to those of the states nearer by.

Hindrances to union

The colonists were separated not only by distance, but also by differences in religion and traditions and ways of living. While they were fighting side by side against England, they had forgotten these differences. But now that war was over and their independence recognized, most of the people naturally fell back into their old ways of looking at things. That is, the people of Virginia thought of themselves as Virginians, those of Pennsylvania as Pennsylva-

nians, and so on; few of them found it easy to think of themselves as all belonging to one country.

In fact, people were giving most of their attention to recovering from the effects of the war. They wanted to lead peaceful lives and attend to their business in shop or field. They paid taxes to their state government, and most of them cared little about the central government with headquarters at far-off Philadelphia.

But there was one matter in particular that helped to make people think of themselves as a united nation. This concerned the ownership of the western lands. The union of the states made it necessary to settle a dispute of long standing. Some of the states claimed that their original charters had given them everything "from sea to sea." When they began to extend their boundaries to the Mississippi there was great confusion. The lines conflicted, and it was hard to decide which were right. The other states which, as colonies, had had no western lands, now claimed a share in them. They argued that they had done their part in the Revolution and so had helped to gain the independence of all the territory belonging to the states.

The matter was settled peaceably. The states, one after another, yielded to Congress their claims to most of the land in question. The part north of the Ohio River became known as the Northwest Territory. Congress

Ordinance of 1787

proceeded to make a law for its government, called the "Ordinance of 1787." This law was important for several reasons. One of its provisions was that, when the population became large enough, the people might elect a legislature to make their laws. Another prohibited slavery forever in all parts of the Northwest Territory.

As this and other problems pressed for solution, the leaders saw that if America was ever to become a powerful nation there must be a change in the form of its government. For the years preceding, the states had kept together under an agreement called the Articles of Confederation. It was under these Articles that Congress had carried on the war for independence.

Articles of Confederation

The Articles of Confederation, useful as they were, had many serious defects. All the states sent delegates to Congress, but when a vote was taken on any measure each state was allowed only one vote, no matter how many delegates it might have.

Again, Congress had no power to enforce its own laws, and there was no single head like a king or a president who could enforce the laws. Worst of all, Congress had no power to get money by means of taxes. Congress had full power to declare and wage war, but this was not enough. Warfare is costly. It is one thing to say, "We are now at war." It is quite another thing to raise the money with which to carry on the war, for soldiers must be paid and ammu-

nition and supplies must be bought. Congress could borrow money, and did borrow a great deal. It could also call upon the different states to pay their share of the expenses, but it had no way of compelling them to pay if they declined. The result was that the states were slow in contributing funds. Each one made the tardiness of its neighbors its own excuse for delay.

This was only one of the weak points of the government. There were many others. Matters kept going from bad to worse. The states quarreled among themselves and with Congress. At last it was seen that something must be done to patch up the weak Articles of Confederation. So Congress asked all the states to send delegates to a convention for this purpose. In May, 1787, the Federal Convention met at Philadelphia, with delegates from every state except Rhode Island.

The Federal Convention

Fortunately for the future of the nation, there were among these delegates some of the foremost patriots of America. All of them are deserving of grateful remembrance, but we can speak of only a few of the leaders. One figure stood out above all the others; this was Washington, who had once more answered the call of his country and had come from his comfortable Virginia home to take his part in solving the problems of the nation. It already owed him much as a soldier. It came to owe him yet more as a wise and guiding statesman.

Indeed, Washington had already shown his patriotism in many acts of statesmanship. There had been a time, just at the close of the war, when the officers of his army, disgusted with the government, suggested that Washington be made king. Had he accepted this suggestion it is very likely that our country would have been doomed to a military government. But the noble character of Washington resented the idea, and he convinced his officers that they were wrong. And now once more he was to lead his countrymen in the paths of peace. When the convention came together Washington was promptly chosen its chairman.

Statue of Franklin at the World's Fair in 1893

Another famous member was Benjamin Franklin, the well-known Philadelphia printer, the coiner of clever sayings, the maker of many inventions, and our genial ambassador to France. A prominent Frenchman said of him, "He snatched the thunderbolt from the sky and the scepter from the tyrants." Franklin was one of the three men who represented America in drawing up the Treaty of Paris. He had now returned to his native land for the last time and, although far advanced in years and in service to his country, he inspired the others by his very presence.

One of the delegates from New York was Alexander Hamilton. He was born in the West Indies, but came to Boston when yet a boy. He was only eighteen when the Revolution began, but he was

Hamilton's tomb, in New York

soon given command of a company of artillery that saw exciting service. Before long he was placed on Washington's staff. He was a cool, dashing soldier, but he was to gain greater honors in time of peace than he had on the field of battle. Small in stature, keen of intellect, a scholar and an orator, Hamilton soon became a leader on the floor of the convention.

Another member was James Madison, a Virginian. He had not fought in the field, but through the trying years of the war had faithfully served as a member of the legislature of his state and of the Federal Con-

gress. Not only was he an active worker in the convention, but he rendered a service of particular value. The sessions were held in secrecy, and no outsider knew what was going on from day to day. But Madison kept a journal of all the proceedings, and it is from this record, published some fifty years later, that we learn most about what took place.

When the delegates had been called together it was understood that their business was to propose changes in the Articles of Confederation. They soon realized, however, that these Articles were so very unsatisfactory that it would be a waste of time to try to patch them up. It would be far better to begin all over again and make an entirely new agreement. So they set about to write a constitution.

Making a constitution

There were all sorts of opinions as to what should be done. The first question was: Shall we create a powerful central government, or shall we continue as a confederation of independent states? Washington and Hamilton, with many other delegates, were in favor of bringing about a strong union. Against them were others, no less patriotic, who believed it wiser that the states should remain important and powerful. They would keep the confederation, however, so that the states would be prepared to work together in time of trouble.

Then there were jealousies between the larger states and the smaller ones. Those which had many people

naturally felt that they should have more control in the government than those with fewer people. But the small states maintained that each of them was just as much an independent nation as any of the larger ones. Hence they claimed equal influence for all states.

There were also several other matters of difference. Clearly only one solution was possible, that of compromise. All the delegates must be patient. All must keep their tempers. It might be possible, in regard to each question, to hit upon some middle course which, although it could not satisfy everybody, would be accepted because it was far better than nothing. And so the convention labored for several weeks.

At last, the spirit of compromise settled every important matter. When the Constitution was finished it was at once seen to be a very great improvement over the Articles of Confederation. The chief gain was that the three different powers of government were distinctly separated. These three powers are known as the legislative, the executive, and the judicial.

The new plan of government

The making of the laws — the legislative power — was put in the hands of a new Congress, which was empowered to levy taxes. This Congress was to be composed not of one house, as formerly, but of two — the Senate and the House of Representatives. Each state sends two senators; but in the House the number of representatives from each state depends upon its

population. This was the compromise that brought together the large and the small states.

The executive power was vested in a President, who was to see that the laws made by Congress were properly enforced.

The judicial power was given to a Supreme Court and to lower courts. The business of the courts is to decide what the laws mean and to settle disputes between parties who go to law.

Thus the three powers of government were separated. But it was all so skillfully arranged that each branch is a check upon the others. For instance, the President can check Congress in its lawmaking by vetoing its bills. Again, the President must have the consent of the Senate when he appoints judges. Again, Congress establishes and abolishes lower courts. In these and in many other ways the three branches depend one upon another.

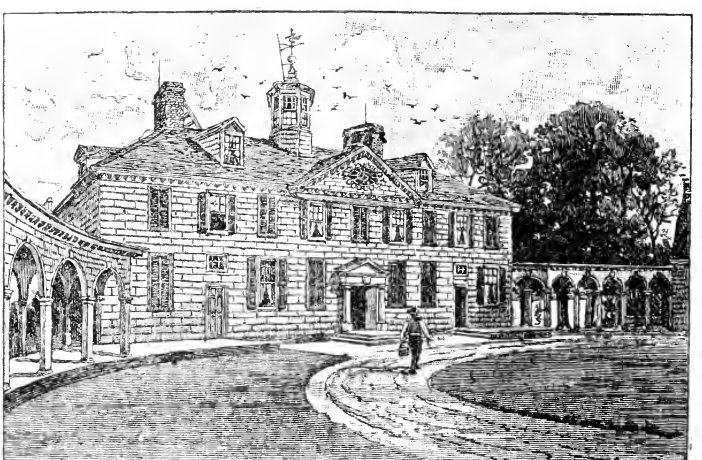
The Constitution ratified

It was provided by the Constitution that as soon as nine states should accept it, they should begin to live under its provisions. On June 21, 1788, New Hampshire, the ninth state, ratified the Constitution and it went into effect. Before long, the other four states came in, one by one, although the last, little Rhode Island, held off for nearly two years. Most of the states, however, accepted the Constitution only with the understanding that it was to be changed in certain important respects. They wanted the rights of the people made

still clearer. Accordingly, soon after the new government got under way, ten amendments were added to the Constitution.

Under the new Constitution certain officers were to be elected. Able men were chosen as members of Congress. For President there could be but one choice. All looked to Washington to guide the new nation, and he was elected without any opposition whatever. For Vice President, John Adams of Massachusetts was chosen. He was a statesman who had played an important part in the Revolution, and had been minister to the English court.

Washington the first President



Washington's home, at Mount Vernon, Virginia

The news of Washington's election was brought to him at Mount Vernon, his quiet plantation home on

the Potomac. Soon afterward he set out on the long journey to New York, then the capital. All along the route the people turned out in force to welcome their beloved leader and to wish him godspeed in the work of his new office. The ovation reached its height in the cities of Philadelphia and Trenton. Here elaborate arches had been erected. Under these Washington rode, a conquering hero of war and peace. As he passed under the Philadelphia arch a laurel wreath was lowered upon his head. It was a modest crown, but as stately as any worn by royal ruler.

At the Trenton arch the President-elect was escorted by schoolgirls, dressed in white, who strewed his path with blossoms and sang an ode in his honor. Two days later he reached New York Bay. This he crossed on a handsome barge which had been built for the memorable occasion. As the boat neared the Battery, and as Washington and his escort landed and were met by Governor Clinton, cannon boomed, flags waved, and the dense crowd of people cheered in hearty welcome. In a week's time all preparations for the inauguration had been completed. Standing on the balcony of Federal Hall, in the city of New York, Washington took the oath of office, pledging himself to "preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

Notwithstanding the glory of his inauguration and the hearty good will which the people throughout the country bore him, it was a heavy task that lay

before our first President. Very perplexing problems, both at home and abroad, had to be solved by the United States before it could really be called a successful nation. Washington selected some of the foremost men of the time to aid him in his work.

Washington's autograph

One of the first things to be attended to was the census. Each state was to send to Congress a number of representatives in proportion to its population. The Constitution provides that, once every ten years, all the people in all the states shall be counted. Accordingly, the first census was taken in 1790, and the count showed the population of the entire country to be 3,929,214. By the thirteenth census, taken in 1910, the population of the United States, including its possessions, numbered more than 100,000,000. Thus the nation has increased more than twenty-fold in a little over a century. This is to be explained partly by the wonderful geography of the country and the opportunities thus afforded. It is in part, too, owing to the genius of the American people. But much is due to the right beginning which was made through the wisdom of the patriot fathers.

The first census

Another question that was settled early in Washington's administration was the location of the national capital. It was difficult to decide on a place that would be acceptable to every

The capital

one. After considerable debate it was agreed to make Philadelphia the capital for ten years. After that the capital was to be on a site on the Potomac River. A tract of land ten miles square was selected, and within this district the city of Washington was founded. Washington has remained the capital of our country ever since the year 1800.

But by far the most difficult home problems were those relating to money matters. Washington had chosen Alexander Hamilton to be Secretary of the Treasury. Hamilton did his work with remarkable wisdom. He found finances in a woeful condition. The Continental Congress had borrowed much money with which to carry on the war. Some of it had been loaned by France, some by Spain, some by Holland. When Hamilton took charge he found that the debt had reached a total of millions of dollars. There were some people who thought that the new government need not concern itself about old debts. But Hamilton knew better. Through his efforts with Congress, arrangements were made to repay the money.

The public debt

Hamilton shrewdly proposed that most of the money needed by the new government be raised by indirect taxation; that is, by some method whereby the people do not directly pay money to a tax collector. So Congress passed a tariff law, taxing goods made in foreign countries and brought here for sale. As a result

The first tariff law

people had to pay a little more for imported articles. With the help of this tax the government was able to meet its running expenses, and also slowly to pay off its debts. Thus, under the wise guidance of Alex-

Building in Philadelphia occupied by the first mint

ander Hamilton, our government began its policy of strict honesty in money matters.

At about this time, too, a mint was built. Here the United States began making its own coins, of gold and silver and copper, based on a new system of dollars and cents. This replaced the English pounds, shillings, and pence used in colonial days.

But it was not alone home problems that the officers of our government had to meet. Our relations with foreign countries were anything but satisfactory. England naturally was looking for any pretext by which she might embarrass the people who had dared to throw off her authority. Spain, our neighbor on the south and west, had hopes of encroaching upon the territory of the weak new nation and increasing her own possessions in America. France, our friend of Revolutionary times, expected us to side with her in her troubles with the other European nations.

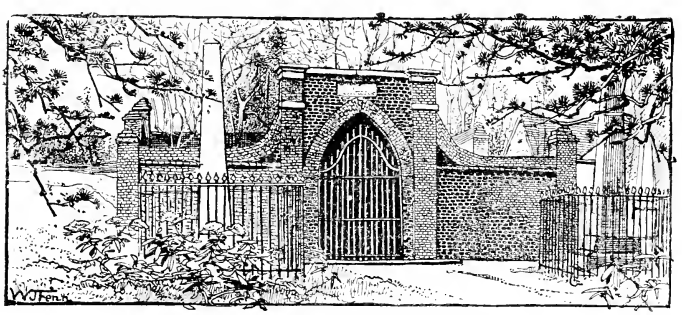
Foreign troubles

There were many Americans who thought that we should go to any length to resent the actions of England and Spain and to befriend France. Washington, however, with his rare wisdom, kept our weak and struggling country out of war. Said he, "My policy has been and will continue to be, while I have the honor to remain in the administration, to maintain friendly terms with, but to be independent of, all the nations of the earth; to share in the broils of none; to fulfill our own engagements; to supply the wants and be the carriers for them all; being thoroughly convinced that it is our policy and interest to do so."

With all these questions coming before the people, it is easy to realize that there must have been many honest differences of opinion among them. Some sided with Hamilton and the other statesmen who

were intent on building up a strong central power. These called themselves Federalists. Those who opposed them followed the leadership of Thomas Jefferson, the author of the Declaration of Independence and now Secretary of State. Thus there began to be political parties in the United States, a condition that is very familiar to us of to-day, and which in many ways has been very fortunate. A government is sure to be better managed if there are strong political parties each closely watching the actions of the others.

Beginning of political parties



Washington's tomb, at Mount Vernon

After much discussion, the term of the President of the United States had been fixed in the Constitution at four years. At the end of Washington's term, he was unanimously reëlected. Four years later he refused to be considered for reëlection. He retired once more to private life at his quiet home on the Potomac. Three years later he died, deeply mourned by the

millions of his compatriots, who lovingly termed him the Father of his Country.

Washington's refusal to accept a third term gave the two parties a chance to put forward candidates for the presidency. The Federalists nominated Vice-President Adams. The other nominee was Thomas Jefferson, the leader of the Democratic-Republicans, as the members of his party soon came to be called. The Federalists were a little the stronger, and John Adams became the second President of the United States.

Adams elected

It was during Adams's presidency that the difficulty with France became acute. The government of France had been changed. It now consisted of a group of five men called the Directory, who managed things with a high hand. They claimed that they had been mistreated by the United States government because it had refused to aid them in their war with England. They even demanded that the American commissioners in France should pay them a bribe of several thousand dollars. To frighten the United States into a settlement, French cruisers began to interfere with American commerce. Feeling in this country ran high. The popular cry echoed the defiant words of Pinckney, one of the American commissioners to France: "Millions for defense; not one cent for tribute!"

French plans thwarted

At this time were written the stirring words of

"Hail Columbia," addressed to the Revolutionary heroes, "Heav'n born band! Who fought and bled in Freedom's cause," thus calling upon them:

> "Immortal patriots, rise once more!
> Defend your rights, defend your shore;
> Let no rude foe with impious hand
> Invade the shrine where sacred lies
> Of toil and blood the well-earned prize." *

Throughout the country rang the thrilling words of this national song, set to the tune of the "President's March," music which had welcomed Washington on his triumphal inaugural journey. The nation set about building warships, the beginning of the American navy. The French, after a few skirmishes at sea, realized that the United States was in earnest, and gladly made peace.

FOR CAREFUL STUDY

In 1783 the United States started upon its career, acknowledged by all the world as an independent nation. There were many reasons why it should grow rapidly in strength. For one thing, it had an immense area and wonderful natural resources. It extended from Canada to Florida, and from the Atlantic Ocean to the Mississippi River.

Boundary disputes among some of the states were soon settled by giving Congress control of the unoc-

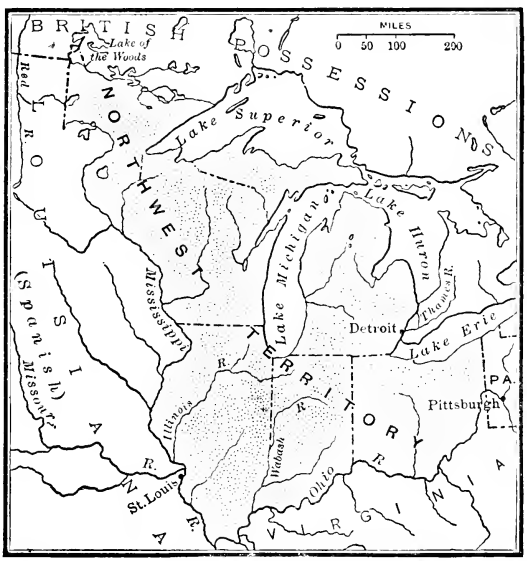
* Joseph Hopkinson.

The United States in 1783

cupied territory in the west. Part of the land was set off and called the Northwest Territory. Its government was provided for by the Ordinance of 1787. Out of this territory there were formed, from time to

time, five states: Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin.

On the other hand, there were many dangers ahead and many problems to be solved if disaster was to be



The Northwest Territory

avoided. The Articles of Confederation, under which the nation was governed, were very unsatisfactory. The people proceeded to adopt a Constitution to take their place. The Constitution went into effect in 1788, and the following year George Washington became the first President of the United States.

During Washington's administration the chief events were: taking the first census; locating the capital at Philadelphia for ten years and then at

Washington; arranging to pay the national debt; passing the first tariff law; and keeping the country out of war with European nations. With the close of Washington's second term, political parties arose, and since that time Presidents have been elected only after party contests.

The second President was John Adams, a Federalist. During his term the French were thwarted in their attempt to levy tribute on the United States.

FACTS TO BE MEMORIZED

The many weaknesses of the Articles of Confederation, under which the Union had been governed, led to the adoption of the Constitution in 1788.

George Washington was inaugurated first President of the United States in 1789.

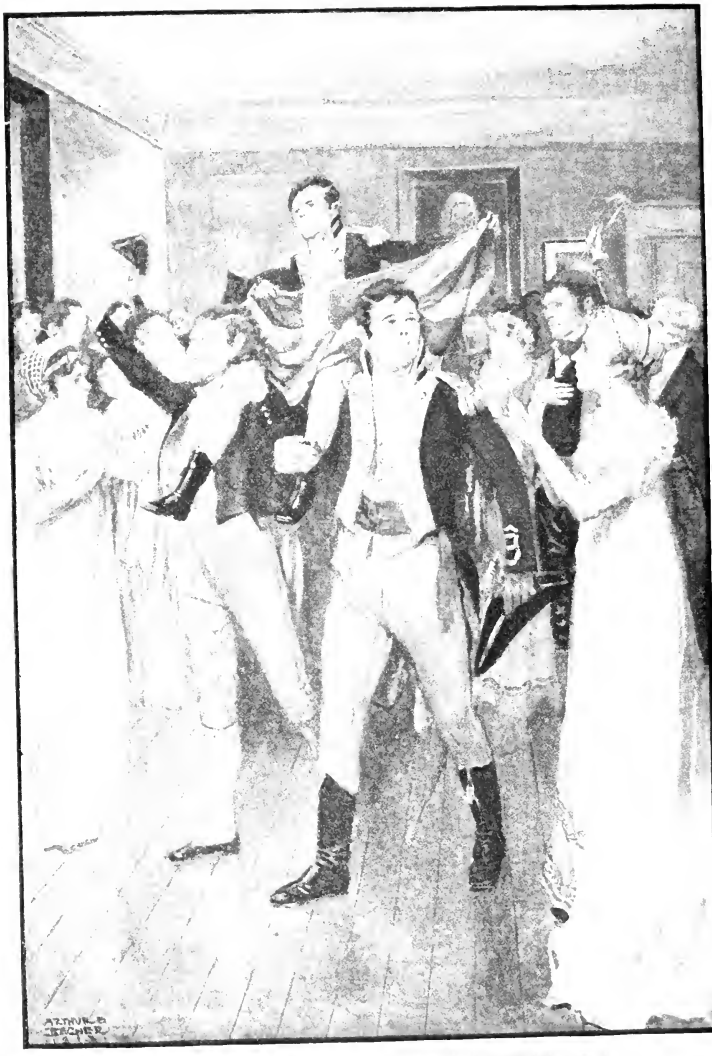
Our national capitals have been New York, Philadelphia, Washington.

Bibliography

Adams. — Brooks: Historic Americans.
Morris: Heroes of Progress in America.
Roosevelt and Lodge: Hero Tales from American History.
Sparks: Men who made the Nation.

Hamilton. — Bolton: Famous American Statesmen.
Brooks: Historic Americans.
Burton: Four American Patriots.
Hemstreet: Story of Manhattan.
Morris: Heroes of Progress in America.
Sparks: Men who made the Nation.

General. — Foote and Skinner: Makers and Defenders of America.



[illegible] shown about him.

CHAPTER II

DEMOCRACY

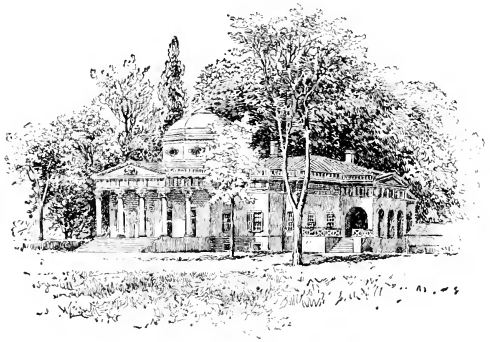
For twelve years the Federalist party, under Washington and Adams, had been in control of the government. During that time there had been a steady increase in the number of people who felt that the Federalists were wrong in their way of doing things. Many thought that our government was too extravagant and too aristocratic. They said that there was too much pomp and ceremony, as if the President thought of himself as a royal ruler. The people wanted their President to act as if he were one of the plain people, like themselves.

When Adams's term drew to its close it was easy for Jefferson's party to overthrow the Federalists and elect their leader President. Thus, in 1801, Thomas Jefferson became President, the first to be chosen by the Democratic-Republican party. This party remained in power for forty years.

Jefferson, President

When Jefferson was inaugurated he introduced several new ideas and customs. Instead of riding to the Capitol in a handsome coach, he walked there from his boarding house like any ordinary citizen.

Jefferson, like many other men of the time, was influenced by the manners and customs of the French.



Monticello, Jefferson's home, in Virginia

In the matter of dress, for example, the courtly knee-breeches and stockings were now replaced with long trousers. It is said that Jefferson even went so far as to receive the English minister, on an official visit, dressed in slippers and other negligee. This much disgusted the worthy Englishman, who regarded it as an insult to himself and his country.

Whatever the new President's eccentricities, all the people knew that he was capable, and most of them were his enthusiastic admirers. During the eight years of his two terms he directed the government wisely and well. One event in particular stands out as the crowning result of his efforts and as one of the most important acts ever performed by any President. This was the purchase of the Louisiana Territory.

The close of the Revolution, we remember, found Spain in possession of the land west of the Mississippi River. This meant that as the American frontiersmen pushed their eager way westward and located along the east bank of the river, they became near neighbors of Spanish subjects. There would have been little trouble, perhaps, if Spain had owned only one side of the river all the way to the Gulf of Mexico, and the United States had owned the other. But for the last hundred miles of the river's course, Spain owned the land on both sides. Her territory included the growing city of New Orleans, which is on the east bank.

Louisiana purchase

The result was that the Americans, when taking their produce to the sea on river rafts, soon found themselves in foreign territory. It was only by the favor of Spain that they could land and do business at New Orleans or go through to the Gulf of Mexico. When, in 1800, Spain ceded this whole Louisiana Territory to France, matters were made much worse, to the American way of thinking. France was a stronger power than Spain, and so might become far more dangerous as a neighbor. Soon the news came that Americans could no longer trade at New Orleans. Our western settlers were much worried. Jefferson, sympathizing with them, determined to help them, if possible. He sent agents to see if some bargain could not be struck with France whereby the United States might gain that hundred miles on the east of the river.

Jefferson went to market at a very fortunate time. Napoleon Bonaparte, then the ruler of France, was engaged in a struggle with most of the nations of Europe. Compared with what he hoped to gain near home, far-off Louisiana was not worth much to him. Moreover, he was afraid that England, with her near-by Canadian colony, might easily wrest Louisiana from him if it remained in his hands. Most convincing of all, he needed all the money he could raise toward the expense of his wars. So, when this opportunity came, he offered the whole of the Louisiana Territory, vastly more than we had asked for, at a price that to-day seems ridiculously low. Jefferson promptly accepted the offer, and Congress voted him the money. Napoleon got his price, $15,000,000; and we got, at less than three cents an acre, a tract of land larger than all of the territory of the United States as it then existed.

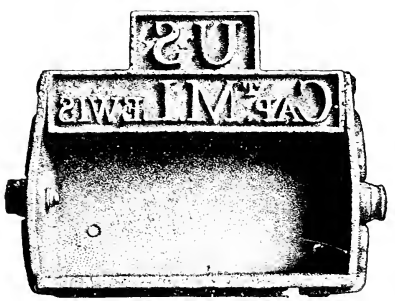
There were, however, some people who grumbled and objected. What did we want of so much land, hundreds of miles away, and probably good for nothing, anyway? But the majority of the people sided with Jefferson. Every one realizes now that in making the purchase he showed shrewd foresight and earned the gratitude of all future generations of Americans.

In the year following, in order to learn more about the land we had acquired, an exploring party of some thirty men was sent out. One of the remarkable things about this expedition was the fact that its

two leaders, Meriwether Lewis and William Clark, were in joint command, yet there is no record that they ever had a single disagreement throughout the two and a half years that they were gone. Starting from St. Louis in May, 1804, the party ascended the Missouri River, passing through a region never before traversed by white men.

Lewis and Clark Expedition

One tribe of Indians after another was met and conquered through friendship. The Indian chiefs were presented with gifts that delighted their fancy, and were told that they were now under the rule of Jefferson, the Great Father at Washington. When the headwaters of the Missouri were reached, the party procured horses from the Indians. With these they crossed the divide of the Rocky Mountains, and passed beyond the limits of the Louisiana Territory.



Branding iron used by Lewis

At length they came to a tributary of the great Columbia River. Traveling down the valley of this river, they reached the Pacific.

The expedition strengthened a claim that the United States had already laid to this far-off region, which was known as the Oregon Country. The claim was based upon the discoveries of Captain Robert Gray, who was the first to carry the American flag around the world. Some years before, Captain Gray had sailed up the great river of the region and had given it the name of his ship, the *Columbia*.

The homeward journey of Lewis and Clark was begun in March, 1806. That they were not extravagantly equipped is shown by Captain Lewis's account. "All the small merchandise we possess might be tied up in a couple of handkerchiefs. The rest of our stock in trade consists of six blue robes, one scarlet ditto, five robes which we made out of our large United States flag, a few old clothes trimmed with ribbons, and one artillerist's uniform coat and hat, which probably Captain Clark will never wear again. We have to depend entirely upon this meager outfit for the purchase of such horses and provisions as it will be in our power to obtain — a scant dependence, for such a journey as is before us." But these were brave and hardy men, and in due time the expedition reached civilization once more. Their accounts of their experiences are of absorbing interest to all Americans.

While we were thus learning about the geography of our new possessions, we were also teaching some foreign people a much needed lesson. The northwest-

ern part of Africa, known as the Barbary States, was inhabited by tribes of desperate pirates. They were of the Mohammedan religion, and felt little respect for the rights of the Christian nations whose traders sailed the Mediterranean. They would capture European trading vessels, and hold the sailors prisoners until ransomed. Powerful governments of Europe had meekly submitted to this treatment and paid heavy tribute to these highwaymen. It was not surprising that the weak and distant United States should have been considered easy prey. More than a million dollars had been contributed by the government and by the churches of our country and paid out in ransoms for our enslaved sailors.

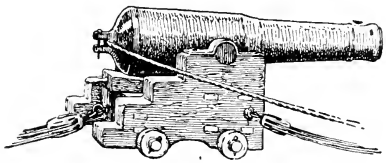
War with Tripoli

A Tripolitan pirate

We were already laying the foundations of a conquering navy, and such a display of force was made that the governor of Tripoli was glad to agree to let us and our ships alone. The treaty was signed in 1805, and within a few years safety to American citizens was assured throughout the Barbary States. But before this date we had been carrying on a war with Tripoli for several years.

Many thrilling adventures are recorded in the history of those days. One of them had to do with the cutting out of the cruiser *Philadelphia*. This was done under the leadership of Stephen Decatur. It was called by a great English naval commander "the most bold and daring act of the age." The *Philadelphia* was a 38-gun frigate which had served the Americans well

Decatur and the *Philadelphia*



Naval cannon

until, chasing a Tripolitan cruiser along the shore, she ran upon an uncharted reef. Despite all that her valiant crew could do, she lay helpless, was captured by the enemy's gunboats, and was drawn into the harbor of Tripoli. Here she was refitted and lay in the inner part of the harbor, protected by the menacing guns of the surrounding forts and the fleet.

Desperate measures were planned for the destruction of the captured vessel. Decatur was detailed to carry them out. He took a party of some eighty men on board the *Intrepid*, a small boat fitted with sails and long sweeps, called in Mediterranean waters a ketch. On a bright, balmy moonlight night, before a fresh

breeze, he sailed the *Intrepid* directly into the jaws of the harbor and up to the *Philadelphia*, which lay at anchor, fully manned, with her guns shotted and ready for action. The very boldness of the venture deceived the enemy. Decatur kept his men under cover. Pretending that he was a peaceful trader, he succeeded in approaching close to the ship before the Tripolitans took alarm. But suddenly the cry arose, "Americanos! Americanos!"

There was not a moment to be lost if the daring Americans would escape being blown to pieces by the heavy guns of the *Philadelphia*. They scrambled quickly aboard the frigate and rushed the startled crew. Not a gun was fired, but the deadly cutlass and sword did terrific service. In less than ten minutes the Tripolitans had been driven overboard by the Americans, who then proceeded to act under a well-ordered plan which had been made in advance. Each man reached his appointed place, carrying combustibles, and touched the torch to them. All over the ship the fiery spears darted upward, and soon the *Philadelphia* was a mass of lurid flame.

For a few moments the Tripolitans ashore and in the harbor were stunned by the wonderful suddenness of the attack. Recovering, as Decatur and his men leaped into the *Intrepid*, they flooded the harbor with shot and shell. Through this cone of fire the *Intrepid*, with its men at the sweeps, worked its way toward the open sea. Behind it, in the lengthening

distance, glared the weird beauty of the blazing frigate. As by a miracle, the crew escaped without a single loss. Presently the *Philadelphia's* overheated guns belched their charge upon the very town she had been captured to defend. Finally, with a wild roar and a flare of flame, she blew up. The frigate *Philadelphia* was no more.

Tripoli was not the only foreign nation that interfered with American commerce. Far greater injuries came about in another way. England and France were at war. Each was attacking the commerce of the other. England captured many French trading ships. France ordered all the nations that were friendly to her, to close their ports to English trading ships. The United States was gaining much of the trade that these two nations were losing. Our country was following the advice Washington had given years before, and was taking no sides in the European controversy. It had declared itself neutral. But presently England forbade American ships to trade with France. Next, France said they should not trade with England. Each began to seize American ships that continued the forbidden trade.

American commerce

This was bad enough, but England went still further. Her expenses were so heavy that she was not paying her sailors as much as the American sailors were getting. Life, too, was easier and happier on the American

Impressment of American seamen

ships. Consequently many English sailors sought service on the vessels of the United States. For this reason England began to search the American vessels for deserters. She claimed that English-born sailors still belonged to her even if they had moved to our country and had been naturalized. She would capture these and "impress" them into her service; that is, force them to serve in her navy, as she often impressed her own English sailors. We denied her right to search American vessels.

American seaman in Jefferson's time

One day in 1807 a British warship, the *Leopard*, met the American *Chesapeake*, as the latter was preparing to enter New York harbor. The English commander ordered the American captain to surrender all deserters, but he declared there were none on board. Whereupon the *Leopard* opened fire. The *Chesapeake* was unprepared for any such attack and was forced to surrender.

American indignation was boundless. It was with difficulty that war was prevented at this time. But it was important that our country should avoid war if possible. It had little money in the treasury, it had hardly any navy, and its strength as an independent nation was still to be proved. Many thought that Great Britain was looking for a chance to whip

the states back into submission. At any rate she and France were treating our country as if it were of no account. Both nations were swooping down upon American merchant ships and seizing them under pretext that they were bound for the enemy's ports. Thus carrying goods by sea was no longer safe.

Some time before this, Jefferson had seen the danger of war. He had been very anxious to avoid it. He realized that the country was in no condition to fight. For this reason he had suggested what was known as the Embargo Act. This law forbade all American vessels to leave port. The idea was that if England and France would not let us trade peaceably with whom we wished, then we would stop trading entirely. But this plan hurt our country as much as it did England and France, the nations toward whom it was directed. The New Englanders particularly felt it. They went back to the old revolutionary practice of smuggling.

The Embargo Act

Stricter laws were then passed to force the people to respect the federal government. Soon empty vessels with furled sails choked the New England harbors. The wharves were deserted, and on the streets loitered idle, rebellious sailors and merchants. Discontent grew, until there were rumors that some states would withdraw from the Union. In 1809 the Embargo Act was repealed, and the Non-Intercourse Act took its place. This act permitted trade with all countries except France and England.

Both those countries continued to seize our vessels in the most insulting fashion. Old friendship for France softened the feeling toward her. Equally, the old enmity toward England increased the American sense of injustice.

James Madison, who succeeded Jefferson as President in 1809, was strongly opposed to war. His messages to Congress recommended peace and patience. There were, however, few Congressmen left who had personal memories of the Revolution, and even the President's party, the Democratic-Republicans, favored war. They were led by two fiery Southerners, Clay and Calhoun, whose impetuous fervor swept all before it. Not only would they make war upon England, but they would invade Canada and annex it to the United States. Older men shook their heads in disapproval, but the younger men had their way. On June 18, 1812, war was declared.

War declared

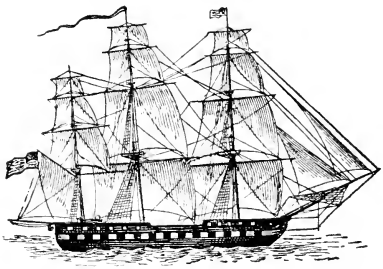
The beginning of the war was marked by both successes and failures. It was easy to talk of the glory of conquering Canada, but Canada was not to be conquered by talk. In July General William Hull left Detroit and invaded Canada. Along the line of advance he heard all sorts of stories about a large army of Canadians and Indians that was bearing down upon him. This false alarm scared Hull back to Detroit, where the enemy overtook him and forced him to surrender.

Failure in Canada

The possession of Detroit carried with it the control of the upper Great Lakes, and of a large part of the Northwest Territory.

On sea, however, there was reason for encouragement. The American navy was small, but a few of its ships were strong, seaworthy craft. Among these was the *Constitution*. Its commander, Isaac Hull, was a seaman of ability. More than this, his men were remarkably well trained. It was said that if all the officers were

The career of the *Constitution*



The *Constitution*

to leave the ship, the crew could manage it and fight just as well. Their faith in the good ship *Constitution* amounted almost to superstition — they believed she could not be beaten. However, in her first encounter with the English she ran away, but that was in order that she might "live to fight another day."

This was how it happened. A fleet of English vessels overtook the *Constitution* on her way to New York. One ship, no matter how sturdy, or how brave her crew, has little chance against seven. Captain

Hull saw this and determined to save his ship. The flight began with a great sweep of canvas, the English in full pursuit; but presently the wind died down. In those days the steam engine was unknown in ocean navigation, and ships were dependent upon their sails. But the American commander devised a clever way of escape.

Finding the water quite shallow, Hull lowered a small boat and in it placed a heavy anchor, to which was attached a long cable. With the anchor the men rowed forward, paying out the line. After they had gone half a mile they dropped the anchor. Then those on board the *Constitution* wound up the cable, thus pulling their ship forward. Before she had ceased moving, a second anchor was ready, dropped, and wound up in its turn. After a while the wind sprang up again. The race continued all day and all night, but by the following morning the British saw that the chase was useless and gave it up. Hull made for Boston harbor. There he could contradict the story that had gone forth that he had surrendered.

Within a month Hull was near Newfoundland. Here he met one of the vessels of the fleet that had given him chase. It was a well-built British frigate, only a little less powerful than the *Constitution.* Its mainsail bore in large red letters

"All who meet me have a care
I am England's *Guerrière.*"

When the order was given to prepare for action, Hull says of his crew, "From the smallest boy to the oldest seaman, not a look of fear was seen." It was not until the vessels were within fifty yards of each other that the order to fire was given. Blast after blast rent the air and made the big ships quiver. On each the colors were shot down. On each gallant hands sprang forward and nailed the flag to the mast. Fast and furious was the fighting. The *Guerrière*, however, was getting the worst of it. Several shots which she had directed toward the body of the *Constitution* bounded back into the water. "Her sides are like iron," her sailors cried. "Hurrah for Old Ironsides!" they shouted, and by this name the *Constitution* came to be known. Presently the *Guerrière* was rendered helpless. Powerless to respond to the volleys from her foe, she surrendered. The glory of

Medal commemorating the ***Constitution's*** victory

the victory lay in the fairness of the fight, and in the gallantry of the captains and crews of both ships.

The whole country was filled with joy over this, the first great naval victory of the young nation. A medal was struck off in honor of it, swords were given to the *Constitution's* officers, and prize money was awarded the crew.

Then followed a series of successes. One of them brought us a famous prize. The *United States*, under the command of Decatur, the hero of Tripoli, met the English *Macedonian* near the Madeira Islands. An hour of hard fighting followed. At the end the *Macedonian* hauled down her flag. This was a valuable capture, for the ship was new. After some repairing, she floated the American flag from her mast. The messenger Decatur sent to Washington with the news of victory was a young officer who had shown unusual bravery during the struggle. Upon his arrival the youth found that nearly all the important persons had gone to a ball. Thither he too went, and entered the ballroom with the flag of the *Macedonian* thrown about him. Almost instantly the people recognized its meaning. The men went wild with joy. They lifted the messenger upon their shoulders and bore him about the room, cheering as they went. At the close of the war the *Macedonian* was sent to Annapolis, where she helped to fire the enthusiasm of America's young sailors.

Other naval victories

The British felt this and their other defeats very keenly. The London *Times* voiced their alarm in the following language: "Upward of five hundred

British vessels captured in seven months by the Americans. Five hundred merchantmen and three frigates! Can these statements be true? And can the English people hear them unmoved? Any one who would have predicted such a result of an American war this time last year would have been treated as a madman or a traitor. He would have been told, if his opponents had condescended to argue with him, that long ere seven months had elapsed the American flag would have been swept from the seas, the contemptible navy of the United States annihilated, and their marine arsenals reduced to a heap of ruins. Yet down to this moment not a single American frigate has struck her flag."

Naval defeats

The English navy far exceeded ours in strength and number of vessels, but most of it was busy in the war with France, which was going on at the same time. Our successes had inspired hope in the hearts of the people. But defeat followed fast in the wake of victory. The turn in the tide began with the disaster to the *Chesapeake*. Under command of Captain Lawrence she encountered the English *Shannon* outside of Boston harbor. The enemy worked terrible destruction in a short time. Three men were shot down from the wheel. The first lieutenant was mortally wounded. Lawrence, in his brilliant uniform, made a sure target. Twice was he shot. As he was dying, he cried out, "Tell the men to fight faster. Don't give up the ship."

The remaining officers fought gallantly, but without avail. The *Chesapeake* was forced to surrender.

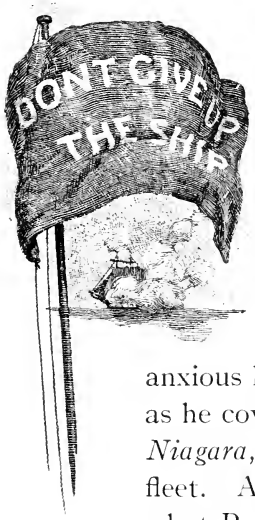
Lawrence was given a naval funeral. He was wrapped in the flag of the *Chesapeake*, and his sword was placed on the coffin. In attendance were American and British officers alike, together with many wounded from the crews of both ships. His body rests in Trinity Churchyard, New York.

The hope of the Americans was badly shattered. Before the close of the year 1813, the British had sent over vessels enough to drive our navy from the sea and to blockade practically our entire seacoast. The United States was a long way from victory. The most pressing need was to regain control of the Great Lakes, so that the Northwest Territory might be saved. A brilliant young officer by the name of Perry had been given this task. He and his men had been hard at work in the forests on the shores of Lake Erie, for they had to build their own ships.

Perry's victory

In September, 1813, Perry's fleet met a British squadron on Lake Erie. There followed one of the hardest, sharpest naval fights in our history. Perry's flagship was the *Lawrence*, named in memory of the commander of the *Chesapeake*. On its blue flag gleamed in white letters the words which have since become the motto of our navy — "Don't give up the ship!" The *Lawrence* pushed ahead of the other six vessels of the fleet and presently was in the full fury of battle.

Her men were shot down, two, three at a time. Only when there were not enough left to fire the guns, and his flagship was nearly shattered, did Perry seem to realize that there was no hope of saving the *Lawrence*.



Flag used by Perry at the Battle of Lake Erie

The blue flag with its gallant motto still fluttered aloft. Perry seized it, left his lieutenant in command of the *Lawrence*, and descended into a waiting boat. Standing erect in the stern, with the emblem fluttering about him, he was exposed to the direct fire of the enemy. With anxious hearts the Americans watched him as he covered the quarter of a mile to the *Niagara*, the next largest ship of his fleet. As soon as the English realized what Perry was trying to do, they turned their guns upon him. Volley after volley came shrieking across the waters. A shot pierced the side of the boat. Perry ripped off his coat and plugged the hole with it. Finally the *Niagara* was reached. With the blue flag flying from her mast top, she plunged forward into the heat of the battle. The other American ships rallied gallantly about her. In ten minutes a British sailor appeared, waving a white handkerchief tied to a splinter.

For the first time in England's long, proud history an entire British squadron had surrendered. "We have met the enemy and they are ours," was the simple message of victory sent by Perry to General Harrison. Harrison was in charge of the land forces near by. He was now able to regain Detroit, and defeat the British at the Thames River. The Northwest Territory was saved.

Battle of the Thames

In 1814 England's war with France ceased. Thus freed, she put new energy into the war with America. She planned a threefold attack: from the north; from the middle coast; and from the south by way of the Mississippi. The first campaign started from Canada to invade New York by the Lake Champlain route. Captain Macdonough met the fleet on Lake Champlain and defeated it. Whereupon the British army deemed it unwise to proceed further. Thus the first plan failed.

The operations on the eastern seaboard were attended with greater success. English ships sailed up Chesapeake Bay and unloaded an army, which marched directly toward the capital. As it bore down upon Washington, householders gathered their treasures together and fled from the city.

The burning of Washington

In the White House the President's wife, the popular "Dolly Madison," was reluctant to leave. Not until the last moment of safety did she depart, after filling her carriage with as many valuables as it would

hold. Among these was a portrait of George Washington — the destroying hand of the enemy should not touch that!

The conquering troops laid low our capital city. They plundered and set fire to public buildings, — the treasury, the Capitol, the White House. Then they marched toward Baltimore. Fort McHenry defended that city against the attacks of a British fleet. The battle began in daylight and raged through the night. It is a battle that lives in the hearts of Americans because one of their best-loved hymns was written at this time.

The "Star Spangled Banner"

In a small boat moored to the British flagship, two Americans were held prisoners. As long as the daylight lasted they could see the Stars and Stripes waving above the fort. But with the darkness came an agony of suspense. Which side was winning? Through the long hours they waited for the first gray streak of dawn. As the light gradually brightened they strained their eyes and then — there was Old Glory waving in the breeze! Baltimore was still safe. One of these prisoners was Francis Scott Key. On the back of an old letter he wrote the verses beginning, "Oh, say, can you see by the dawn's early light." When released, so the story goes, he gave the poem to his uncle, who ordered a printer to strike off copies. The printer evidently liked it, for before the ink was yet dry he rushed to a near-by restaurant frequented by patriotic

Americans, burst in upon them, and read aloud the thrilling first stanza. "Sing it," some one cried. The words were immediately fitted to a popular air,

Part of the "Star Spangled Banner" in Key's writing

and the "Star Spangled Banner" went ringing throughout the country.

For the third part of their plan, the English gathered forces amounting to full twelve thousand. New Orleans was to be the scene of action. To its defense the President sent Andrew Jackson, a man of great vigor. Under him were untrained militiamen, in numbers only half as many as the English soldiers, but each of the mettle that fights to the finish. It was in December, 1814, that the British landed. Jackson threw up intrenchments south of the city. On January 8, 1815, the English made an attack, and Jackson forced them back, not once but twice. The Americans, behind their rude breastworks, and with a small amount of ammunition at their command, mowed down twenty-five hundred brave British who fought for their lion as the Americans fought for their eagle. It was a great victory, but it was needless. A treaty of peace had been signed on December 24, 1814. There were

Battle of New Orleans

in those days, however, no five-day steamers to carry the news, or ocean cables to flash the message.

Curiously, the treaty made no mention of the chief causes of the war, — the searching of American vessels and the interference with American commerce. It was not needed, however, for the war had won for the United States so hearty a respect from other nations that no such indignities would be practiced again. Other advantages were gained. For one thing, we had learned how able our seamen were and how much we could depend on our navy in case of trouble. Cut off by the war from the manufactured goods of England, the Americans had themselves begun new kinds of manufacture. In this way many of our gigantic industries had their beginning. The less we needed to purchase goods abroad, the more real was our independence of Europe.

Peace

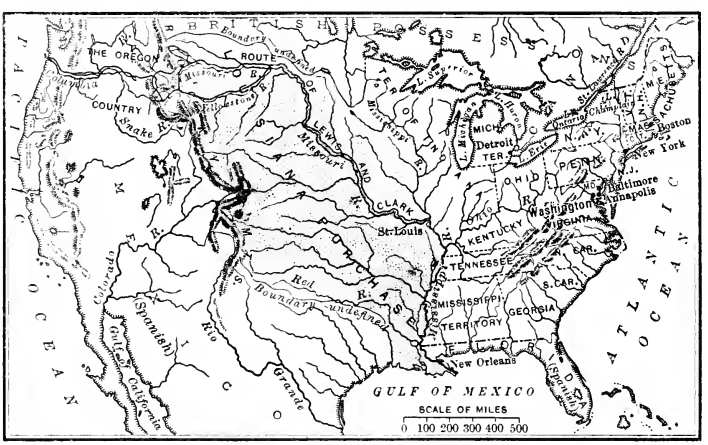
FOR CAREFUL STUDY

The third President was Thomas Jefferson, the leader of the Democratic-Republican party, who served two terms. Under his leadership the Louisiana Territory was purchased, and Lewis and Clark were sent to explore the new country. The United States waged a war with Tripoli, which resulted in making that country agree to let American ships alone.

Jefferson was succeeded by James Madison, who also served two terms. During this time our Second War with England was waged. It arose from Eng-

land's interference with our commerce, and from her impressment of American seamen into her navy. War was declared in 1812, and opened by an unsuccessful attempt to invade and conquer Canada. This was followed by the defeat of the American army in the Northwest.

But on the seas the Americans gained many stirring victories. The *Constitution* defeated the *Guerrière*, and earned for herself the title of Old Ironsides. The *United States* captured the *Macedonian*. There were many other successes, and also many defeats, beginning with the capture of the *Chesapeake* by the *Shannon*.



The Louisiana Purchase

In the Northwest the situation was saved in 1813 by Commodore Perry, whose fleet met the British squadron on Lake Erie and completely defeated it, and by

General Harrison, who won the battle of the Thames. The British, during their campaign in the middle states, sacked Washington, but were repulsed at Baltimore. At the south, early in 1815, a British army was overwhelmingly defeated at New Orleans, by the Americans under General Jackson.

The treaty of peace did not mention the chief cause of the war, but this was not necessary. England never again attempted to search our vessels or interfere with our commerce.

FACTS TO BE MEMORIZED

The Louisiana Territory was purchased from France in 1803, and afterwards explored by Lewis and Clark.

The Second War with England, 1812-1815, secured independence for American commerce and gained the respect of European nations for the United States.

Bibliography

Decatur. — Seawell: Decatur and Somers.
Jefferson. — Burton: Four American Patriots.
Ellis: Thomas Jefferson.
Sparks: Men who made the Nation.
Perry. — Barnes: Hero of Erie.
General. — Barnes: Yankee Ships and Yankee Sailors.
Eggleston: Captain Sam.
Hitchcock: Louisiana Purchase.
Seawell: Twelve Naval Captains.
Tomlinson: Boy Officers of 1812.
Tomlinson: Boy Soldiers of 1812.

CHAPTER III

PROGRESS AND INVENTION

By the close of the War of 1812 the Federalist party was fast disappearing. In 1817 Madison was succeeded by another Democratic-Republican, James Monroe. When his first term expired, the Federalists nominated no one, so that Monroe's reëlection was almost unanimous. Because at this time there were no political parties opposing each other, the period is often spoken of as the Era of Good Feeling.

Monroe and prosperity

It was a time of general prosperity. Relieved of the strain of warfare, the people were free to give their attention to other things. Great advances were made in industry. Marvelous inventions followed one another with rapidity. Even before the outbreak of the war startling changes had taken place. The chief of these was due to an American inventor. Robert Fulton had built a large boat that would go without sails!

Fulton, when a young man, studied in Europe. There he learned of the steam engine, the invention of a Scotchman, James Watt. Fulton tried to make use of the steam engine in the construction

of a torpedo boat. Abandoning this work for a time, he planned to build a steamboat. People called the idea a dream and laughed at the dreamer. It seemed as if they were right, for the first attempt to make the steamboat go was a failure. Napoleon, the Emperor of France, realizing how useful a successful steamboat would be, ordered another test. The night before the new trial was to take place the little boat sank, borne down by the weight of its machinery. Fulton was bitterly disappointed.

Fulton and the *Clermont*

The inventor determined to make the next attempt in his own country. Accordingly, he built the *Clermont*, which was promptly nicknamed Fulton's Folly. Her trial trip, up the Hudson, was made in August, 1807. Crowds stood on the river bank ready to jeer at the inventor, but the *Clermont*, despite a strong head wind, made the trip from New York to Albany in thirty-two hours. Then the crowds cheered in wonder and admiration, for sailing vessels took four days to cover the same distance.

The strange craft created much astonishment and some alarm. Because of its huge side wheels, many thought it was a mill. One old countryman fled from the sight of it and confided to his wife that he had seen "the devil on his way to Albany in a sawmill." However, steamboats on the Hudson were soon making regular trips, and were used by many people because of the time saved. The fare was high — fourteen

dollars — and the accommodations poor. There were no staterooms or beds. Each passenger brought his own bedding and slept on the floor in a space marked off for his use.

Not alone the Hudson, but presently all the large rivers were floating the new wonder on their waters. The Mississippi was one of the rivers that made great gains in commerce through the use of the steamboat. Soon the people of the East began to fear that all the trade between Europe and the West would go by way of this river. Governor Clinton, of New York, urged the building of a canal across his state. It was to follow the route that had been used by the Indians and early settlers when they journeyed westward through the Mohawk valley. From near Albany, on the Hudson, it was to extend to Buffalo, on Lake Erie. It would thus, by the shortest route possible, connect the Atlantic Ocean with the Great Lakes and the productive region around them.

The Erie Canal

The canal plan, like that of the steamboat, met with derision. One of the arguments against it was that Lake Erie is nearly six hundred feet above the level of the Hudson. How, the people asked, can water be made to run uphill? This criticism was easily met: locks would be used to make the water lift the canal boats over the hills. New York state appealed to Congress for money with which to build the canal. Although refused, the New Yorkers

kept up their efforts so vigorously that they earned for themselves the title of the "most persistent beggars in Congress."

People called the proposed canal Clinton's Big Ditch. They hesitated to put the state's money into the digging of a ditch nearly four hundred miles long, forty feet wide, and four feet deep. Finally, business men, under the leadership of Governor Clinton, undertook the task of putting through the work. They managed to convince the New York legislature that it would be to the benefit of the state to vote funds for this purpose. The money was secured and in 1817 the work was begun. In 1825

Towing a canal boat

Governor Clinton had the pleasure of making the first trip through the completed canal. The fare from Buffalo to Albany was soon reduced to less than a

quarter of what it had been. Towns sprang up along the banks of the canal, like mushrooms in the night.

The western states, too, Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois, profited by the Erie Canal. Now they could buy their axes, plows, and other utensils much more cheaply than heretofore. Probably the city that profited most of all from the canal was New York, for it was to this port that much of the produce from the West found its way. So, to the slowly moving canal boat, pulled by a sleepy-stepping donkey, the city of New York owes in part its giantlike growth.

The Erie Canal opened up for settlement the western part of New York state and the region of the Great Lakes. As far back as 1790 the people of the states along the seaboard had begun to move westward. Those from New England followed the Mohawk valley. Those from Pennsylvania and Virginia migrated into what is now West Virginia and Kentucky. Those from southern Virginia and northern North Carolina journeyed in a steady stream over the Blue Ridge Mountains into the Tennessee valley.

The westward movement

These pioneers found their way beset by difficulty and danger. Of those whose paths led through the wilderness, many traveled afoot. Others went on horseback or by wagon. Flatboats dotted the rivers, carrying whole families with all their worldly goods. The woods rang with the crash of falling timber as the settler made a clearing for his rude log cabin. As of

old, the Indian, to keep his hunting ground, fought the white man, step by step; and as of old, the white man won.

The farther west the people pushed, the greater their need of connection with the East. They wanted the clothing and farming tools which were made in the East. These they paid for with the rich products of the soil or with the furs from the animals of the mountain regions. To meet the demand for better means of transportation, the government built a road called the National Pike or the Cumberland Road. It went from Cumberland, Maryland, on the Potomac, to Wheeling, West Virginia, on the Ohio. Yet more than this was needed.

Early railroads

The relief which came at last was due to the invention of an Englishman, George Stephenson. It was he who gave to the world the first locomotive. Small engines, run on short roads of wooden tracks, had been in use in mines; but Stephenson's engine was far larger than these and very imposing to the people of his time. The common means of travel was the stagecoach, and the prospect of going more rapidly was startling. An English magazine writer said most earnestly, "We trust that Parliament will, in all railways it may sanction, limit the speed to eight or nine miles an hour, which is as great as can be ventured on with safety." Stephenson's own prophecy that "the time is coming when it will be cheaper for a working man

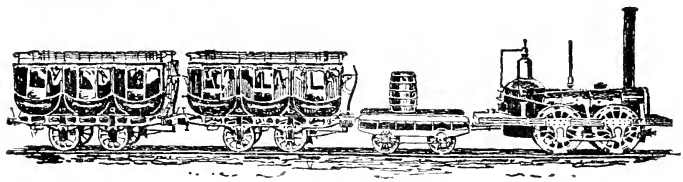
to travel on a railway than to walk on foot," seemed very foolish.

The earliest American railroad was the Baltimore and Ohio. The first stretch of road ran from Baltimore fourteen miles westward to Ellicott Mills. When ground was broken for its construction, the first shovelful was turned by a very old man, Charles Carroll of Carrollton, Maryland, the only signer of the Declaration of Independence then living. With silver spade in hand he said, "I consider this one of the most important acts of my life, second only to that of signing the Declaration of Independence, if second even to that." For a short time the cars on this road were pulled by horses, but these were soon replaced by locomotives. The first locomotive was built by Peter Cooper. On its trial trip a thoroughbred horse raced with it. The locomotive came very near winning and would have won but for a slight accident. Its success greatly astonished the good people of the day.

Several other lines were started about the same time as the Baltimore road. At first wooden tracks were used and there were no regular railroad companies. Any one might use the rails on which to run his own car or engine. The first railroad trains had no cab for the engineer or fireman and no brake with which to stop the train quickly. The cars were little more than stagecoaches on rails. The passengers were fully exposed to the wind and the weather, smoke, cinders, and flying dirt. On the hills the train was

pulled up by means of strong ropes and a stationary engine. Before crossing a bridge the smokestack had to be lowered, because the bridges of those days were covered with low roofs. In consequence, heavy clouds of smoke lighted by burning cinders spread over the choking passengers so that they hid their faces and gasped for air. But all these discomforts seemed trifling compared with the results gained.

The locomotive opened up this great country with its wonderful resources. The cities were brought closer together. The time soon came when it was possible to go from New York to Philadelphia in a



A railroad train in 1831

half day instead of a week. Within five years, more than twenty railroads had been started in the United States. A steady increase followed, and from 1850 to 1860 each year saw as much road built as would reach from New York to Denver.

The early locomotives burned wood, but had they continued to be dependent upon wood for fuel, it is doubtful if we should now have our great system of railroads. The problem of furnishing fuel for the steam monsters was solved by the discovery of immense deposits of coal.

Coal found in Pennsylvania

An odd story is told in this connection. Two Pennsylvania Indians in much alarm related to a Quaker friend their experience of the previous evening. They told him that they had built a fire under a river bank. To prop up their kettle they had used some black rocks. Presently they were startled to see the rocks catch fire and burn brightly, sending up clouds of filthy black smoke. They were dreadfully frightened, for they feared an evil spirit was at work. So they seized the kettle, poured the water over the fire, and fled. The Quaker quieted the fears of the Indians, telling them that their black rocks were coal. He investigated the region, and found it rich in this valuable mineral. Later, anthracite, which is hard coal, was discovered. Since that time large quantities of coal have been taken from Pennsylvania as well as from many other regions of the United States.

The railroad was not the only influence that was bringing the people closer together. The printing press was doing its share. Daily newspapers were being issued in Boston, Baltimore, and New York. By 1840, also, the great American express business had been started. It was begun in a simple way. A young man carried parcels in a small handbag between Boston and New York. At first he had no more to do than he could attend to alone, but in a short time he had so many orders that he had to hire an assistant. Think of the great army of men now in the express business!

Presently another advance in the means of communication was made by an American inventor, Samuel F. B. Morse. He said that he could make electricity carry messages over long distances. But he found it hard to convince people that he could do so unheard-of a thing. In his devotion to the study of his invention, Professor Morse suffered all sorts of hardships. It is said that his funds once became so low that he had no food for twenty-four hours. Finally, in 1844, he persuaded Congress to give him the money to build a line from Washington to Baltimore. It was soon completed, and the world marveled at its success. The dots and dashes of the first message, traveling

Morse and the telegraph

A – —	H – – – –	O – –	U – – –
B — – – –	I – –	P – – – – –	V – – – —
C – – –	J — – – —	Q – – — –	W – — —
D — – –	K — – —	R – – – –	X — – – –
E –	L — —	S – – –	Y – – – –
F – – —	M — —	T —	Z – – – –
G — – –	N — –		

The Morse telegraph alphabet

the forty miles in an instant, spelled out the words: "What hath God wrought!"

These were a few of the striking changes that had taken place in the early nineteenth century, and in all directions rapid progress was being made. For instance, before 1825, grain was threshed by beating it with a heavy stick attached to the end of a leather strap, or by

Other inventions

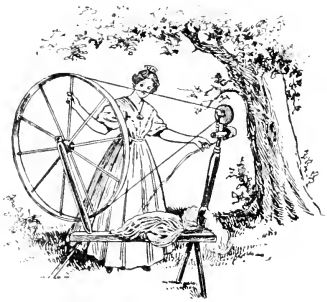
having cattle tramp on it. Then came the threshing machine. With it and the reaper, invented a little later, the farmer's work was made much easier. By this time, too, he had added to his tools, American-made axes, hatchets, and chisels. A further addition was that useful friend of boy or man, the pocket knife.

In the earlier days, after cutting down a tree, the settler sawed and finished it into boards as best he could. But the old ways were being abandoned. Now the big tree trunks were fed to machines that sawed them into boards of the desired size. There were, too, other machines that planed boards into polished smoothness.

The housewife, as well as her husband, profited by the progress. Formerly she had to bank the fire over night. Even if she did this very, very carefully, it sometimes went out. Then perhaps she would have to awaken a drowsy small boy in the cold early morning and send him in haste to her nearest neighbor to borrow a shovelful of hot coals with which to start the fire again. A new invention, the sulphur match, made this no longer necessary. Indeed, it may be that she boasted that in her household the open fire was seldom used, the stove having taken its place.

As early as 1800, in the homes of the prosperous, carpets, woven in America, covered the floor of at least one room. Even if the other rooms were bare, the labor of keeping them clean was made much lighter by the introduction of brooms manufactured

from the broom plant. Compared with these, the earlier brooms, made of brush, were very rude implements. The new ones were much lighter and more pliable.



A spinning wheel

In many a farmhouse the spinning wheel was becoming idle. The farmer's wife soon found that she could save time and money by buying her fabrics in the city. Moreover, there she could make her selection from the large variety put forth daily by the busy mills. So, even though the journey was still somewhat uncomfortable, she was willing to make it.

Spinning cotton in a mill

And the shoemaker! No longer did he travel from home to home. Time was when Crispin, as the children called him, was a welcome visitor in the household. He was generally a jolly fellow who traveled over the same country, season after sea-

son. At the farmer's door he would inquire into the condition of the shoes of the various members of the family. Nearly always there was work to do — but first the bargain had to be made. Sometimes the farmer provided his own leather. Often Crispin accepted board and lodging as part of his pay. His fund of stories never gave out, nor was he ever weary of telling them. But, alas! the Crispin shoes went out of style. Far handsomer ones could be purchased from the factories. So, before long, the traveling shoemaker was no more.

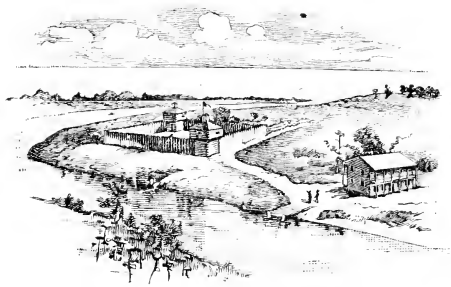
Mrs. New York had become quite particular about the style and quality of her wardrobe. Once the number of her gowns was limited. Now she must have a different kind for each and every occasion. She began to keep one eye upon Mrs. Philadelphia lest the latter lady outstep her in the latest fashions.

All these changes necessarily brought about great changes in the manner of living. When the farmer purchased one of the new machines he dismissed from his service the men whose work the machine did more rapidly. These men had to go elsewhere for work, and they found it in the great growing cities. People of moderate wealth also sought the cities so that they might invest their money in new lines of business.

Machinery and manufacturing

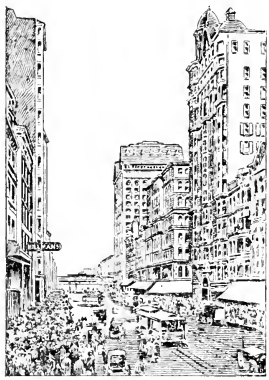
The manufacturer was not content to use the labor-saving machines for just his own needs. He was on the alert to put them to greater use. The larger the

machines, or the greater their number, the greater the amount of work that can be turned out, — and that of course means greater profits. And when he can, the manufacturer turns his profits into more machinery and employs more men. From such beginnings has grown the modern factory with its vast army of workers.



Fort Dearborn, on the site of Chicago

To the factories and to the canals and railroads our large cities owe much of their rapid growth. Chicago is a remarkable example. In 1830 it was but a small village, protected by a fort, called Fort Dearborn. In 1837 its inhabitants numbered 4170; to-day they exceed two million.



A street in Chicago at present

While this progress in industries and inventions was going forward, other interesting changes were taking place.

Florida Purchase

For one thing, the United States added to its territory. The farsighted Jefferson had secured for the growing

nation the vast Louisiana Territory. In 1819 another land purchase was made: Florida was bought from Spain for $5,000,000. Contrasted with Louisiana, Florida seemed a small return for the money spent — but it was well worth the price. It extended our Atlantic seaboard southward to the Gulf of Mexico, and, besides, there was another good reason for wanting it.

Florida was the home of the Seminole Indians, fierce and barbarous red men. Since they owned no golden treasure or mines of rich ore, Spain let them do about as they chose. In consequence, the people of Georgia and Alabama lived in constant terror of the deadly raiding parties that bore down upon them from Florida. When pursued, the marauders retreated across the border line. Here they were safe, for the United States soldiers had no right to follow them into the territory of another country. For this reason, too, criminals sought to escape to Florida, where the law could not punish them. Often they joined the Indian parties and urged them to horrible crimes.

There was one man, however, who dared to put all law aside and to enter the troublesome territory. This was General Jackson, a hero of the War of 1812. At that time the Creeks of Georgia and Alabama had joined forces with the English. Jackson had grown to hate them. During the progress of the war, when the opportunity came, he punished them so severely that they were forced to beat a hasty

retreat into Florida. Later they united with the Seminoles.

Because of his physical strength and dauntless courage, Jackson's soldiers affectionately called him Old Hickory. When he was sent to protect the frontier after the war, he marched boldly into the Spanish territory. For three months Old Hickory was a name to be feared. Nor did Jackson cease operations until the country was thoroughly subdued. Spain resented his bold, high-handed action. It looked for a while as if the United States might be led into war with her. But all this trouble was settled by the purchase of Florida.

Other events, too, were happening in the political world. In 1823 the United States made clear its attitude toward foreign nations. President Monroe proclaimed to European countries how we should treat any interference by them in America. It happened in this way. The monarchs of Europe feared the spirit of independence which the American colonists had shown. This spirit was growing elsewhere, and might lead their people to rise up against them. To prevent such a happening several of these monarchs formed an alliance, by which each promised to help the others subdue rebellious subjects. Spain was asking for help to reconquer her South American colonies which had set themselves up as independent nations. It seemed, moreover, to those who were looking

Monroe Doctrine

on, that Russia meant to increase her territory in America. She already owned Alaska, then called Russian America. So, in a message to Congress, President Monroe stated plainly our feelings in both matters. He said that we should take sides with no European country when it was at war. On the other hand, if a European power attempted to conquer territory or to plant new colonies in the Western World we should regard it as "an unfriendly act." This message practically said to the countries of Europe: "Keep out of America." Although it has never been put into a law, the American people have ever since supported this declaration, known as the Monroe Doctrine.

The home of President Jackson, in Tennessee

Jackson and the Spoils System

An important change took place, also, in the way the Presidents regarded office-holders. Monroe was succeeded by John Quincy Adams, and he in turn by Jackson, the hero of New Orleans and Florida. Jackson claimed that it was not fair that those who had been appointed to government positions by former

Presidents should continue to hold office. He said that others ought to have a chance. In consequence, he turned out at least two thousand men and filled their places with his own political friends. This made positions look like rewards for belonging to the victorious side. As some one put it, "To the victors belong the spoils." Hence, the practice is generally spoken of as the Spoils System. It was followed for a long time afterward and resulted in much harm to the country.

The Presidents from Jefferson to Jackson were all Democratic-Republicans. From this time on, the party was known as the Democratic party. Under Martin Van Buren it held the presidency for yet another term. But after thus continuing in power for forty years, the Democrats met defeat. The new Whig party put forth as their presidential candidate, General Harrison, another hero of the War of 1812; for Vice President, they named John Tyler. It was at Tippecanoe that Harrison, just before the opening of the war, had defeated the Indians. So now to the song of "Tippecanoe and Tyler too" the Whigs marched to victory, and the power of the Democrats was broken. But the joy of the victorious party was soon turned to mourning. Harrison had been in office only a month when he died. For the first time in our history the Vice President was called upon to succeed his chief, and Tyler became President. The Democrats came back to power under the next President, General Polk.

A new party

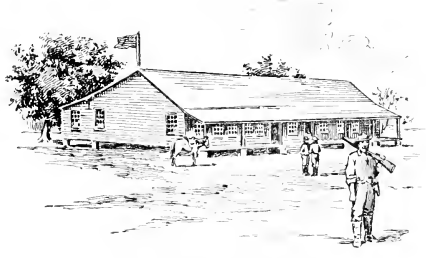
It was during this period that two questions of disputed territory were settled. One of these concerned the far northwest. Out beyond the Louisiana Purchase was a tract of land known as "the Oregon Country." There English and American traders had settled, so both countries claimed the territory. England claimed as far south as 42° north latitude, while the United States claimed as far north as 54° 40′. Some enthusiastic Americans raised the cry, "Fifty-four forty or fight!" and for a short time war threatened. Fortunately the matter was settled by compromise. In 1846 the Oregon Country was divided, and the 49th parallel was fixed as the boundary line between the two nations.

The Oregon Country

The second dispute was not so peaceably settled. The story dates back as far as 1821. In that year, after three centuries of Spanish rule, Mexico succeeded in winning her independence. But the Mexicans were not ready for republican government. The greater part of them were half-breeds — half Indian and half Spanish. The remainder were either native Indians or pure Spanish. Having thrown off the yoke of Spain, they were yet unable to agree among themselves. One of the most northern of the Mexican states, Texas, by hard fighting, gained her freedom in 1836. Her independence was recognized by the United States and later by France, Great Britain, and other European powers, but not by Mexico.

Texas has a large area. Her rich and fertile soil and mineral resources had attracted many Americans. These not only had invested large sums but had made their homes in that promising region. After eight or ten years of independence Texas sought admission to our Union. Immediately there flashed out that rivalry between the North and South which in late years had been growing rapidly. The South ardently desired the

Annexation of Texas



The first capital of Texas

admission of Texas because it meant greatly increased representation for that section in Congress. For the same reason the North opposed it, fearing to have the South strengthened.

The question was serious, too, because of the attitude of Mexico. She had not acknowledged Texas as independent; therefore, annexation to the United States was likely to bring war between the two nations. To this argument there were those who answered: "The United States would do well to declare war against Mexico. She has, at various times, damaged

the property of American citizens, insulted our officers, and dishonored the flag."

In spite of the argument against it, in 1845 Texas was admitted to the Union. Immediately dispute arose over the southern boundary line. The Texans claimed to the Rio Grande, but Mexico insisted that the line should be a river some hundred miles northward. President Polk ordered General Taylor with a strong force into the disputed section. The Mexicans felt this to be an invasion of their territory, so, crossing the Rio Grande, they, too, entered the disputed field. A slight skirmish took place, in which some Americans were killed. Polk promptly sent a message to Congress: "Mexico has crossed the boundary of the United States, invaded our territory, and shed American blood on American soil." Congress declared that war existed.

War with Mexico

Though many questioned the justice of this war, there was little doubt during the two years it lasted as to which side was going to win. From the outset the Americans showed superior training and better knowledge of military tactics. Even when outnumbered, their enthusiasm and dogged persistency won the day. The Mexicans fought bravely, but were handicapped by lack of supplies, poor generalship, and a weak government. They went down before the dash and energy of the invaders.

In the northern campaign, General Taylor, called by his devoted soldiers Rough and Ready, won every

battle of importance. He was attacked by the Mexicans at Buena Vista, where he won a victory that gave the Americans control over a large area. In the south General Scott landed at Vera Cruz and took the city after a siege of more than a week. Thence he successfully fought his way in from the coast until, in 1847, he stood, a conqueror, in the capital city of Mexico, where Cortes had stood three hundred twenty-six years before.

This ended the war, though the treaty was not made until the following year. By it the United States secured not only the Rio Grande as the boundary line, but also territory reaching from Texas to Oregon, out of which, in time, California and several other states were formed. For this territory, however, the United States paid a good round sum. She gave Mexico $15,000,000 and, for her, paid to American citizens whose property had been injured, damages amounting to $3,500,000. This was followed five years later by the purchase, for $10,000,000, of yet another portion of Mexican territory south of the Gila River; it is usually spoken of as the Gadsden Purchase in honor of the man who brought it about. Since that time the two neighbors have never had any misunderstanding over the boundary line between them.

The Mexican War was the first in which our men of arms swept all things before them. Throughout the country it aroused a fire of enthusiasm that did much to weld us together as a nation.

FOR CAREFUL STUDY

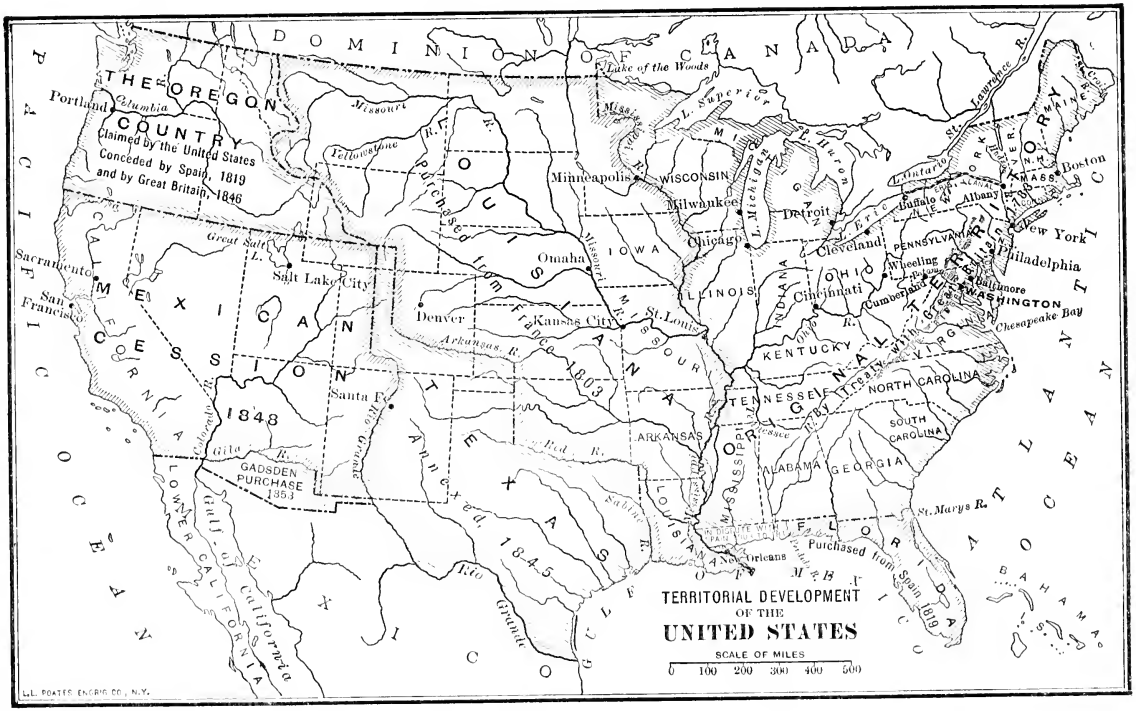
In 1807 Robert Fulton built and ran the first successful steamboat, which made many trips between New York and Albany.

In 1817 James Monroe succeeded Madison in the presidency, and the period of his two terms is known as the Era of Good Feeling. In the year he came into office, the state of New York began work on the Erie Canal, completing it eight years later. The canal helped to open up the country west of the Appalachian Mountains, which heretofore had been reached only by wagon roads. The canal and the roads were soon supplemented by railroads, the first of which was begun in 1828.

The days of Monroe and his successors in office were full of progress in still other directions. Rich deposits of coal were found, which furnished power for railroads and manufactures. Many important inventions were made, among them the electric telegraph, the threshing machine, and the sawmill. All these new creations helped to make life more comfortable, but also led to decided changes in the manner of living. Factories were built near one another, and people gathered in large towns and cities.

In politics important events took place. Monroe set forth the doctrine that the United States would keep out of any dispute European nations might have among themselves, but would object if any of them tried to extend its territory in America.

President Jackson was the founder of the Spoils System. He said that the winning party in an elec-


TERRITORIAL DEVELOPMENT
OF THE
UNITED STATES
SCALE OF MILES
0 100 200 300 400 500
DOMINION OF CANADA
PACIFIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
THE OREGON COUNTRY
Claimed by the United States
Conceded by Spain, 1819
and by Great Britain, 1846
Portland
Columbia R.
Missouri R.
Yellowstone R.
Lake of the Woods
Mississippi R.
L. Superior
L. Michigan
L. Huron
L. Erie
L. Ontario
St. Lawrence R.
Boston
New York
Philadelphia
Baltimore
WASHINGTON
Chesapeake Bay
Albany
Buffalo
Detroit
Cleveland
Wheeling
Cumberland
Cincinnati
Ohio R.
Chicago
Milwaukee
Minneapolis
WISCONSIN
MICHIGAN
IOWA
ILLINOIS
INDIANA
OHIO
PENNSYLVANIA
NEW YORK
NEW JERSEY
MAINE
N.H.
MASS.
VERMONT
Great Salt L.
Salt Lake City
Sacramento
San Francisco
CALIFORNIA
MEXICAN CESSION
1848
Denver
Omaha
Kansas City
St. Louis
MISSOURI
Arkansas R.
Santa Fe
Rio Grande
Colorado R.
Gila R.
GADSDEN PURCHASE 1853
LOWER CALIFORNIA
Gulf of California
TEXAS
Annexed, 1845
Red R.
Sabine R.
ARKANSAS
LOUISIANA
MISSISSIPPI
ALABAMA
GEORGIA
FLORIDA
Purchased from Spain 1819
St. Marys R.
New Orleans
Rio Grande
GULF OF MEXICO
BAHAMA IS.
ORIGINAL TERRITORY
TENNESSEE
KENTUCKY
VIRGINIA
NORTH CAROLINA
SOUTH CAROLINA
Purchased from France 1803
Purchased from Spain 1819
L. L. POATES ENGRG. CO., N.Y.

tion ought to put out of office those who had been appointed by its opponents and fill their places with its own members.

In 1819 the United States purchased Florida from Spain. In 1846 the northwestern boundary of the United States was fixed by treaty with Great Britain at 49° north latitude.

In 1845 Texas, which had but recently gained her independence from Mexico, was admitted as a state. This led to war with Mexico. Under Generals Taylor and Scott the American armies defeated the Mexicans at every point. The treaty, in 1848, settled the boundary line between the two nations and also provided for the purchase by the United States of an extensive territory in the West.

FACTS TO BE MEMORIZED

Florida was purchased from Spain in 1819.

The Erie Canal was completed in 1825.

The first American railroad was begun in 1828.

The Mexican War, 1846–1848, was caused by the annexation of Texas and a dispute over its southern boundary.

The Mexican War, in which the Americans won every battle, resulted in fixing the boundary at the Rio Grande, and in the purchase from Mexico of California and other territory.

Bibliography

Erie Canal. — Foote and Skinner: Makers and Defenders of America.

Fulton. — Eggleston: Stories of Great Americans for Little Americans.
Foote and Skinner: Makers and Defenders of America.
Hale: Stories of Invention.
Jacobs: Historic Inventions.

Jackson. — Brooks: Historic Americans.
Foote and Skinner: Makers and Defenders of America.

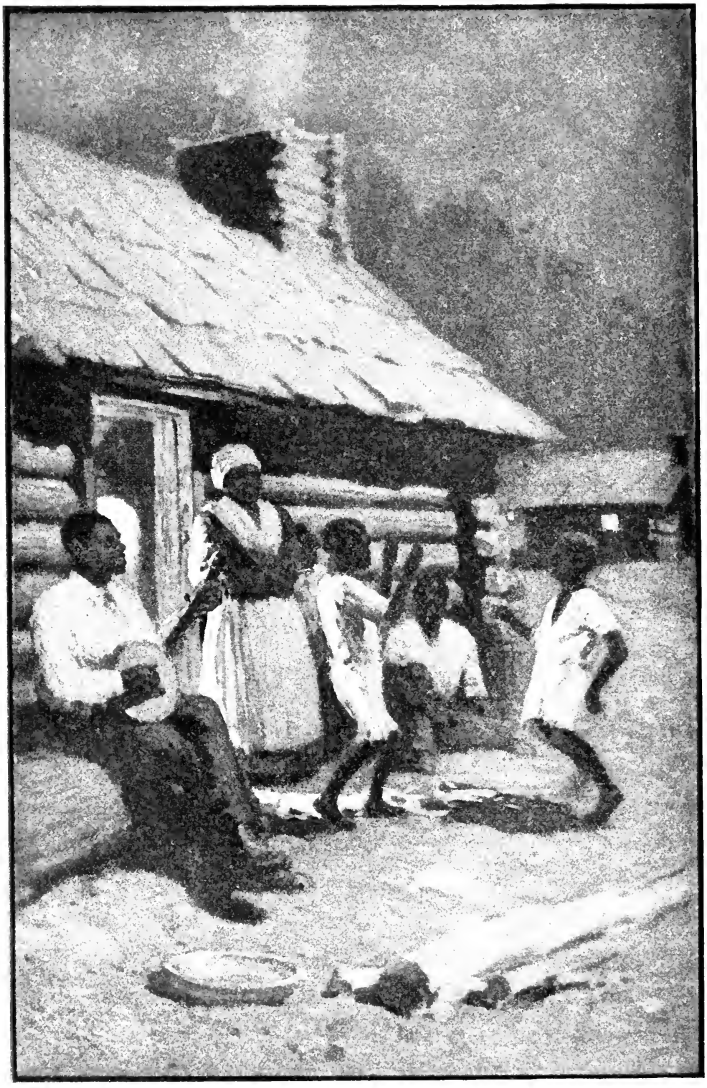
Mexican War. — Smith: Under the Cactus Flag.
Stoddard: The Red Mustang.

Morse. — Burns: Story of Great Inventions.
Foote and Skinner: Makers and Defenders of America.

Stephenson. — Foote and Skinner: Makers and Defenders of America.
Hale: Stories of Invention.
Jacobs: Historic Inventions.
Wright: Children's Stories of American Progress.

Texas. — Otis: Philip of Texas.

General. — Mowry: American Inventions and Inventors.



CHAPTER IV

SLAVERY

THOUSANDS of years ago all the people of the earth were savages. In those days bloody wars were of frequent occurrence. There was only one law: might made right. There were none of the rules of war which to-day lessen its cruelties, and so the battles were even more horrible than now. Not only were prisoners put to death, but often helpless women and children and old men were brutally massacred.

Origin of slavery

In time, victors realized that they could do better with a captive than to kill him. They could put him to work. They needed to pay him no wages, but only to feed him so that he could do the tasks set before him. Then they could take the products of his labor for their own use. In this way there arose that which we call slavery, — one person owned by another just as a horse or a dog or a piece of furniture is owned. There were other reasons for the rise of slavery, but warfare was the chief cause of it. Thus we see that, when it was first established, slavery was really a step in advance. It saved people from horrible deaths, giving them their lives on condition

that they work for their masters, the masters who had conquered them in battle.

Presently there grew up the custom of bartering slaves. If a man owned a slave just as he owned a dog, surely he could sell the slave if he wanted to, just as he would sell his dog. Slavery once established, people bought and sold slaves, as they would buy and sell animals or farm implements. They seldom took the trouble to inquire how the slaves had been obtained originally. This made it easy for men to make a business of trading in slaves. They would go into a country and seize people in great numbers either by force or by trickery. Then they would sell their captives as if they were cattle.

Thus it came about that even civilized people kept slaves. The Spaniards, when they first came to the New World, made slaves of the Indians and put them to hard labor. Not long afterward, English traders began the practice of buying negro slaves in Africa and selling them at great profit in America. For many years this trade in African slaves was carried on by the people of several nations. It was in 1619 that the first negro slaves were brought to English America.

Slavery in America

When, in that year, a Dutch man-of-war sailed up the James River and offered some twenty negro slaves for sale, the settlers of Jamestown bought them without hesitation. From this beginning, the slave trade in America grew to very large proportions. At the time of the Revolu-

tion, slaves were found in every one of the thirteen colonies. By far the greater number were in the South. In fact, in the year 1790, there were sixteen times as many slaves in the southern states as in the northern states,— not because the people of the North thought that slavery was wrong, but because the slaves were not particularly needed there.

This was due chiefly to the differences in climate which brought about different occupations and different ways of living in the two regions. In the North, the work in the shops and on the small farms could be done just as well and even better by the white men than by slaves. Practically the only negroes there were family servants. In the South, with its hotter climate, the chief industry was the raising of large crops of tobacco, rice, and indigo. The negroes, from the hot belt of Africa, were better able than were the white men to work under the broiling southern sun. Thus, in the South large plantations grew up, each with its small colony of slaves.

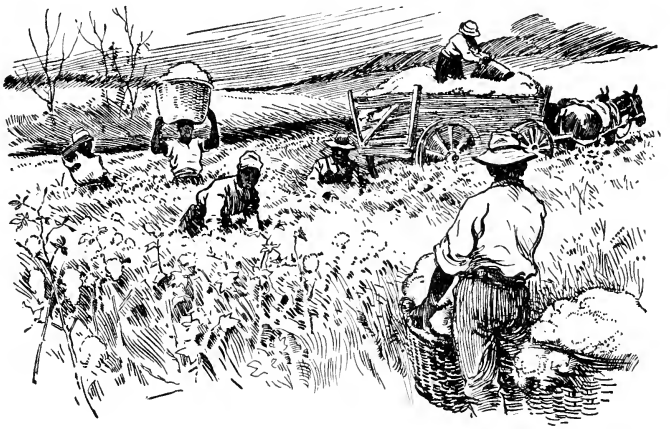
In course of time most of the slaves had little knowledge of Africa. Many years had passed since their ancestors were brought to America. They themselves had known nothing of the awful horror of capture by scheming traders nor of cruel days and nights spent in chains in the hold of the slaveship. Born in this country, they grew up knowing no other. To them it was home, just as it was home to their white masters.

Most of the negroes, especially in the northern part of the sunny South, lived careless, easy-going lives. They were a childlike people, with no sense of responsibility. The little negro very early learned the difference between himself and the white folks at the Big House. The Big House occupied a choice location on the plantation and sheltered the master and his family. All the doings of the great people there were of intense interest to all the blacks, from the little pickaninnies to the oldest old aunties and mammies. Whatever Mars' John and Missis and little Mars' George and all the others were doing was of general concern to the whole colored colony.

Plantation life

About each Big House there clustered the rude huts of many families of slaves, — all forming a sort of little independent colony. Some of the handier and more intelligent of the negroes were kept at the Big House to work as butlers and cooks and other family servants. The others labored in the fields, frequently the women alongside the men. When work was done, or they could avoid doing it, they enjoyed getting together for a rollicking time. A supper of corn bread and bacon and sweet potatoes was reckoned "mighty fine eatin'." Some of the thriftier of the negroes kept a few chickens. How they were envied by their neighbors when, from their cabins, there issued the odor of fried chicken, proclaiming to all that they were dining in grand style!

The negroes were very fond of music and were quite clever when it came to playing on simple instruments, especially the banjo — it may be that the negroes invented the banjo. They greatly enjoyed religious meetings, and much of their singing was of jubilee



Slaves picking cotton

hymns. They never seemed to tire of gossiping about their Mars' John. They loved to boast of how much braver and smarter and richer he was than the master of the neighboring plantation. An Englishman who had traveled in Georgia tells about meeting a slave and asking her if she belonged to a certain family. She replied merrily, "Yes, I belongs to them and they belongs to me."

One of their songs that showed their pride in their master ran thus:

"Massa's niggers am slick and fat,
Oh! Oh! Oh!
Shine just like a new beaver hat,
Oh! Oh! Oh!
Turn out here and shuck this corn,
Oh! Oh! Oh!
Biggest pile o' corn seen since I was born,
Oh! Oh! Oh!

"Jones's niggers am lean and po'
Oh! Oh! Oh!
Don't know whether they get enough to eat or no,
Oh! Oh! Oh!
Turn out here and shuck this corn,
Oh! Oh! Oh!
Biggest pile o' corn seen since I was born,
Oh! Oh! Oh!"

From this you see that the negroes spoke a picturesque English quite their own. Many of them were fond of using long words with great gusto, but their thoughts for the most part were as simple as their daily lives. They lived close to the nature about them and delighted in wonderful stories of animals and their make-believe adventures. Mr. Joel Chandler Harris, writing as "Uncle Remus," has gathered together a great many of their stories, which make very enjoyable reading. For instance, one of them begins:

"Bimeby, one day, arter Brer Fox bin doin' all that he could fer to ketch Brer Rabbit, en Brer Rabbit bin doin' all he could to keep im fum it, Brer Fox say to

hisself dat he'd put up a game on Brer Rabbit, en he ain't mo'n got de wuds out'n his mouf twel Brer Rabbit came a lopin' up de road lookin' des ez plump, en ez fat, en ez sassy ez a Moggin hoss in a barley-patch.

"'Hol' on der, Brer Rabbit,' sez Brer Fox, sezee.

"'I ain't got time, Brer Fox,' sez Brer Rabbit, sezee, sorter mendin' his licks."

And so it goes on through several very interesting chapters.

Many of the slaves, under these conditions, were quite contented and happy. But on some plantations life was sadly different. In parts of South Carolina and Georgia, for instance, rice, for many years the chief crop, was grown in hot, unwholesome swamp lands. The planters preferred to live in the city of Charleston, where it was cooler and more pleasant than on the plantations. So they put the work into the hands of overseers, who sent the negroes out in gangs and sometimes drove them so hard that they became surly and ugly.

Slave gangs

Whether the slaves lived in Virginia, in Georgia, or in New York, the fact remained that they were slaves. It is true that many of the negroes were well cared for. No doubt they were better off than they would have been if free to shift for themselves. But it is also true that there was much suffering and sorrow. For the slave was the absolute property of his master. That

meant that if the master was disposed to treat his slave cruelly, he could do so without any fear of the law. More than this, the master could sell the slave whenever he chose. The slave's new owner might take him hundreds of miles away, and thus he might be separated from his family forever.

The right and wrong of slavery

In the colonial days people were so familiar with slavery that they gave little thought to the question whether it was right or wrong. Indeed, most of them took for granted that it was right. Some defended it because, they said, the negroes were much better off as slaves in America than as wild savages in their native homes in Africa. Some even went so far as to assert that the negroes were not human beings and therefore had no rights which men need respect. However, as the years passed, many people, north and south, came to feel that, old and profitable as it was, slavery could not, after all, be right. To them it was clear that even if a man were not of the white race, to enslave him and treat him as a possession must be wrong.

These people argued against slavery. Many of them were slave owners. Some, by freeing their slaves showed that they were quite ready to practice what they preached. They had some influence, as is shown by the fact that ten of the thirteen original states had laws forbidding the importation of slaves. That is, slaves already here might be bought and sold, but no more could be brought into those states from Africa

or other countries. However, when the Constitution was formed, it was agreed that, for a period of twenty years, the United States should not forbid any state to import slaves if it wished to do so. This was done to please the two Carolinas and Georgia; three states that had not yet enough slaves to work their fields.

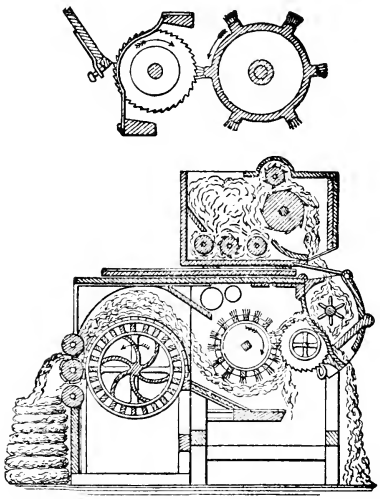
Most people thought that slavery would gradually decline, — perhaps it would die out altogether in the course of a few decades. But this hope was soon shattered.

Cotton, which had been a very unimportant plant, suddenly became the king of the southern crops. It had not been cultivated extensively because it cost so much to prepare it for the mills. The cotton plant produces a pod or boll filled with fluffy white fibers. It is from these fibers that cotton cloth is made, but first they must be separated from the countless little seeds imbedded in them. One man could spend all day faithfully picking out the tiny seeds, and then find that he had but four or five pounds of the clean cotton to reward him for his day's work. At this rate cotton was a very costly product. It would never pay to build and run large mills to manufacture it into fabrics.

The cotton gin

Just before the close of the eighteenth century, Eli Whitney, a young man from New England, visited the South. Interested in cotton, he set his inventive mind to the task of

devising some sort of machinery that would do the work of separating seeds and fiber. It was not long before he had invented a cotton-engine, or cotton-gin, as it was soon nicknamed. His machine combed out the seeds from the fiber. It did the work so well and so rapidly that with it one man could clean as much cotton as two hundred men could clean by hand. This started the planters to raising cotton instead of some of the less profitable crops. Now there was much more work for slaves to do than there had ever been before.



The cotton gin

Thus slavery gained a new importance to the people of the South. They came to depend more and more upon slave labor in their homes and plantations. As slavery became more important and necessary to them, they defended it vigorously. The whole subject soon became a very vexing political problem. For sixty years the statesmen of the nation struggled to settle it. How it was solved we have next to consider.

FOR CAREFUL STUDY

Human slavery is a very old institution. As people became more humane they realized the wrong of it, and it no longer exists in any civilized country. In the United States, however, it was not abolished without a tremendous struggle.

Slaves were first brought to English America in 1619, when they were sold to settlers at Jamestown. Many thousands more were imported during the two centuries following. Owing to the differences in climate and in the occupations of the people, there was work for many slaves in the southern states, while few were employed in the North.

Slavery existed in the South under various conditions. On many plantations the life was that of a clan centered about the white owner and his family. The negroes enjoyed family life and were well cared for by their owners. But in some cases, the owners of the big plantations lived at a distance and managed them through overseers, who often worked the negroes cruelly. These slaves had little of the pleasant family life that the more fortunate enjoyed.

The discovery of the cotton gin made matters worse. With this machine the planters could work more negroes and make more money than ever before. Hence there was an increased demand for slaves.

From that time the right and wrong of slavery was much discussed and the number of people who were opposed to slavery increased rapidly.

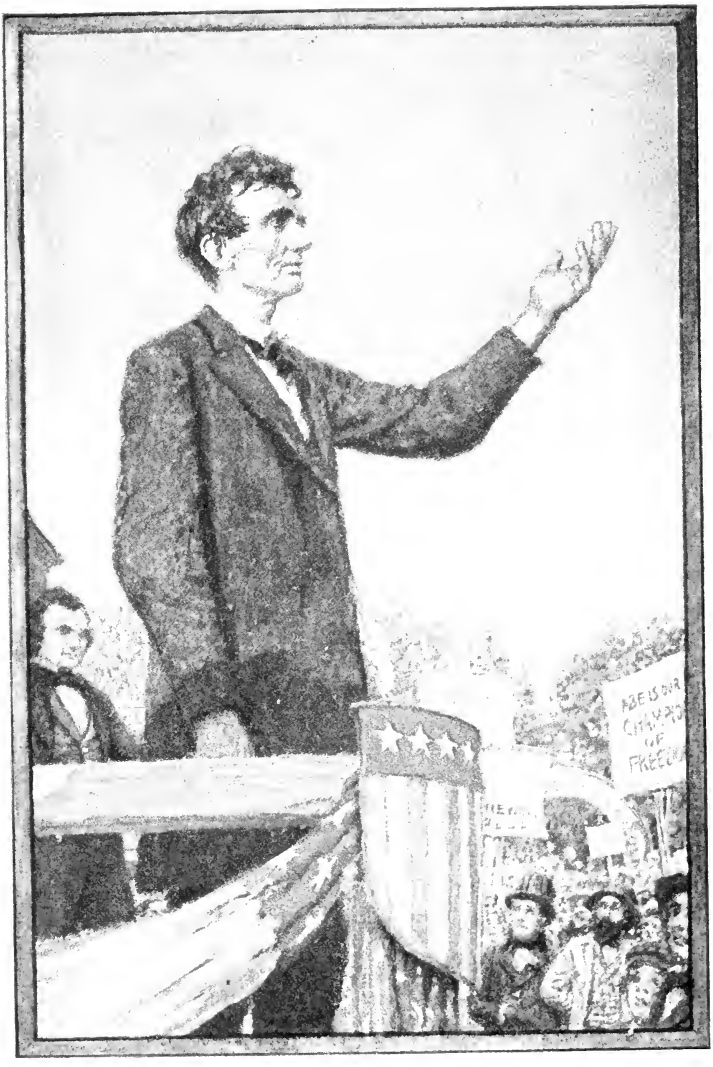
FACT TO BE MEMORIZED

Negro slavery was introduced in Virginia in 1619.

Bibliography

Cotton Gin. — Foote and Skinner: Makers and Defenders of America.
Hale: Stories of Invention.
Jacobs: Historic Inventions.
Mowry: American Inventions and Inventors.

General. — Harris: On the Plantation.
Harris: Told by Uncle Remus.
Harris: Mr. Rabbit at Home.
Harris: Nights with Uncle Remus.
Harris: Uncle Remus and the Little Boy.
Harris: Uncle Remus: his Songs and his Sayings.



Lincoln-Douglas debate

CHAPTER V

SECESSION

If we are to understand how slavery figured in politics we must go back to the earlier days of the nation. The union of the states had been accomplished only because people who disagreed on important questions were ready to meet each other halfway. Slavery was one of these questions. Those who believed in it and those who did not, seemed willing to look at the matter with each other's eyes. The result was that several compromises were agreed upon.

Of the thirteen original states, six had many slaves. The other seven had few and were opposed to slavery—in fact, one after another, they abolished it by law. The Constitution provided, as we remember, that each state should have two senators. Thus, as nearly as could be, the Senate was divided equally between the two sides.

Slavery in the Constitution

But in the House of Representatives, each state was to be represented according to the number of its people. Immediately a serious argument arose. In taking the census of the states were the slaves to be

counted? Naturally those states in which there were many slaves said "Yes." The others answered: "But you say that slaves are property and not persons; therefore, they should not be counted in the population any more than are your horses and cattle." To settle this dispute a curious compromise was made. It was decided to count each slave as three fifths of a person. Thus, if a state had 100,000 white people and the same number of slaves, the slaves were to be considered as equal to 60,000 white people, and the population of the state would be reckoned as 160,000.

Another question was: "Shall we allow slaves to be imported into the United States?" This, too, was settled by compromise. Congress, as we have learned, was not to stop the importation of slaves for twenty years. At the end of the twenty years Congress prohibited the practice entirely.

The Northwest Ordinance

A third provision was that if a slave ran away from his owner, he could be brought back even if he had escaped into a state where slavery was prohibited. A runaway slave was called a fugitive, and we shall hear more about Fugitive Slave Laws later on. There was a fourth agreement which helped to offset what slavery had gained. It was not put into the Constitution, but had been made part of the famous Ordinance of 1787. This provided that there should be no slavery in any part of the great Northwest Territory. It is well to

remember that when Congress voted on this measure, both northern and southern states voted in favor of it.

Thus, at the beginning of the nation, the people supposed they had settled the question of slavery. It might have remained settled but for one important fact. The population of the lands beyond the limits of the thirteen states grew steadily and rapidly. These people soon formed states which, from time to time, were admitted to the Union. A close balance, however, between slave and free states was kept. The first to come in was Vermont. Its people had belonged, some to New York and some to New Hampshire, so naturally they were opposed to slavery. This made eight free states, but the six slave states were soon reënforced by the admission of Kentucky and Tennessee. Thus in the Senate both sides were brought to equal terms. Next came Ohio and Louisiana, then Indiana and Mississippi, then Illinois and Alabama, — three pairs, — in each case a free state and a slave state.

The balance of states

The year 1820 still found both sides equally strong, — eleven slave states and eleven free. But in that year a new situation presented itself. Missouri, a part of the Louisiana Territory, applied for admission as a state. There was no law forbidding slavery in this territory as there was in the Northwest Territory. Thus the question as to whether Missouri should be slave or free became a matter of dispute.

paper called "The Liberator." By the poet Whittier he was termed the

"Champion of those who groan beneath
Oppression's iron hand."

Whittier was one of Garrison's strongest supporters, and he too worked strenuously in the cause of abolition. He tried to make the people see that they who

THE LIBERATOR.

VOL. I.] WILLIAM LLOYD GARRISON AND ISAAC KNAPP, PUBLISHERS [NO. 17.

Boston, Massachusetts] [Saturday, April 23, 1831.

THE LIBERATOR

Part of first page of "The Liberator"

had fought so valiantly against oppression ought not themselves to oppress others. How could a nation, he asked, which had written the Declaration of Independence still keep hundreds of thousands of human creatures in slavery?

"Our fellow-countrymen in chains!
Slaves, in a land of light and law!
Slaves, crouching on the very plains
Where rolled the storm of Freedom's war."*

Many notable men early joined the ranks of the Abolitionists. Among these was Theodore Parker, one of Boston's leading ministers. Another was

* Whittier: Expostulation.

Wendell Phillips, the "silver-tongued orator," who devoted thirty years of his life to the cause. It was he who said, "If I am to love my country, it must be lovable; if I am to honor it, it must be worthy of respect." It required a great deal of courage in those days to come out in favor of abolition. In the first place there were many people in the North who profited in one way or another by slavery. Then there were a great many who thought that so long as they themselves did not keep slaves, they need not be concerned with what other people were doing. Just to say that one did not believe in slavery was easy enough, but to become an out-and-out Abolitionist was going much further.

The Abolitionists cried out for emancipation. By this they meant that the slaves should be given their freedom whether they wanted it or not, and whether or not their owners wished to free them. Here was a startling proposition. People resented it without stopping to consider whether it was right or wrong. Theodore Parker found that even his fellow-ministers were refusing to recognize him. He wrote: "Here I am as much an outcast from society as though I were a convicted pirate."

Abolitionist speakers were hissed and interrupted, and more than one of these reformers received bodily injury. Even in Boston, at a meeting at which Garrison was to speak, he was mobbed and dragged through the streets. He was saved from serious in-

jury only by the action of the mayor, who lodged him in jail. An eye-witness says of him: "The man walked with head erect, flashing eyes, like a martyr going to the stake, full of faith and manly hope." And this happened in that city of noble memories of Bunker Hill and the fight for freedom!

It is not strange that in the South the Abolitionists were thoroughly hated. The statesmen of the North, too, had a good reason for not following the Abolitionists. It was the desire to preserve the union of the states at any cost. Ever since the Constitution had been adopted there had arisen many serious questions hinging upon the relation of the United States to the individual states. How much of their rights had the states given up when they joined the Union? And could they, at any time, take back any of these rights?

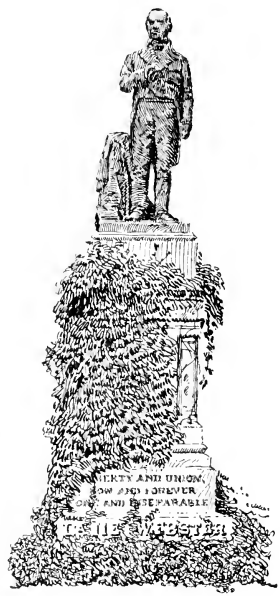
State rights

For instance, when a state claimed that a law of Congress was unfair, could it say: "We refuse to obey this law"? To do this would be nullification, because it would nullify the law; that is, it would make the law null or of no effect. Or, could the state go still further and say: "We cannot agree with our fellow states; so we will draw out of the Union and once more be an independent nation just as we were at the close of the Revolution"? To do this would be secession.

Nullification

There were many people in both the North and the South who believed in the right of nullification and of

secession. In several instances states had declared that they had the right to nullify a law, and even to secede from the Union. One of the most important of these cases was over a tariff law which did not please some of the states. There was a heated debate in the Senate, in which Robert Y. Hayne, of South Carolina, made a speech in support of nullification. He declared that the South was acting on a principle she had always held sacred, — "resistance to unauthorized taxation." Hayne was answered by Daniel Webster, who concluded with the memorable words: "Liberty *and* Union, now and forever, one and inseparable!" In 1832 the state of South Carolina declared that it would nullify the tariff law and that if necessary it would secede from the Union. But President Jackson was not moved by this threat. He warned the people of that state that if they disobeyed the Federal laws, he would use the army and navy to make them obey. Under the influence of Henry Clay the law was soon after slightly changed to please South Carolina. This, and the determined



Statue of Daniel Webster, in New York

stand of the President, prevented the secession of that state.

When, some years later, the cry of abolition was raised, the great southern leaders declared very positively that the slaveholding states would secede rather than give up slavery. Among these leaders was John C. Calhoun, a South Carolinian, who had served two terms as vice-president and who for many years was a member of the United States Senate. Said he: "We love and cherish the Union; we remember with the kindest feelings our common origin, with pride our common achievements, and fondly anticipate the common greatness and glory that seem to await us; but origin, achievements, and anticipation of common greatness are to us as nothing, compared with this question. It is to us a vital question." Even some of the people of the North began to say that the free states ought to secede rather than to remain in a union with states that supported slavery.

Fugitive Slave Law

There was one feature of the Compromise of 1850 that was particularly annoying to the antislavery people. This was a new Fugitive Slave Law. The owner of a runaway slave had the right to recover him, even if he escaped into a free state. Formerly, the owner had only to declare his ownership and the slave would be delivered over to him. But many states had passed laws making it harder for the owners to recover their

runaway slaves. So the slave owners demanded help from the national government, and the law of 1850 took the matter out of the hands of the states.

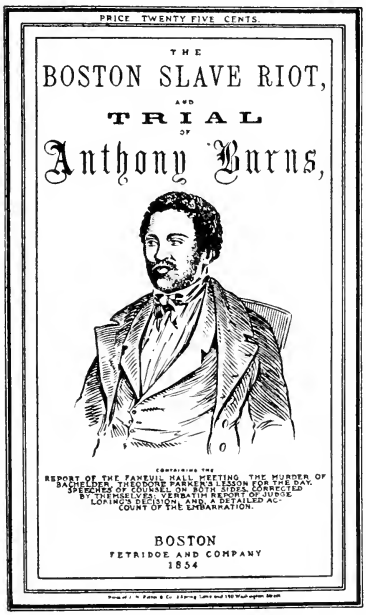
Now a slave owner could claim any negro in any free state as his own. He could call upon United States officers to seize the negro and return him. As a result the North was soon overrun by man hunters. Many of these were not the owners of slaves, but only agents of owners. Some were even making a business of hunting down helpless negroes. Such a man had only to claim that any negro he met was a fugitive, taking his oath that this was so. The negro in question could say nothing in protest, even though as a free man he might have been for many years living a life of industry and honesty.

Picture of runaway used in newspaper advertisements

All this incensed thousands of the people of the North. It was their turn to claim the right of nullification. They began to talk of a "higher law," meaning that they should follow their consciences rather than a "wicked law" of Congress. The Fugitive Slave Law was not violated openly, but many Northerners managed to nullify it by helping the negroes to freedom. Thrilling stories are told of slaves who in one way or

another made their escape, only to be recaptured under the Fugitive Slave Law.

Anthony Burns was a negro whose case attracted much attention. Burns had fled from Virginia and was working as a waiter in a hotel in Boston. Here he was captured and imprisoned in the court house. This angered the people of Boston. They held excited meetings, and made an unsuccessful attempt to rescue the negro. Finally, under guard of several hundred soldiers, he was taken to the wharf and put on board ship. In spite of the threats of the people, he was carried back to slavery. It is interesting to know that in this instance enough money was subscribed by people in Massachusetts to buy Burns from his owner and to bring him back north. But not many of the recaptured fugitives fared so well.


PRICE TWENTY FIVE CENTS.

THE

BOSTON SLAVE RIOT,

AND

TRIAL

OF

Anthony Burns,

BOSTON
FETRIDGE AND COMPANY
1854

Cover of pamphlet on the Burns case

Great was the feeling against the law, and many were the people who sympathized with the fugitives.

Thus it became more and more easy for slaves to make their escape and more and more difficult for their owners to retake them. It soon became a regular thing for certain people to work together to help the runaways. This they did in spite of the fact that they might be fined or imprisoned. If the escaped slave could but reach one of these sympathetic friends his chance of freedom was good. He would be passed on from one to another until finally he reached Canada. There the British laws against slavery protected him. It was all done so systematically and so secretly that the pursuers were usually baffled in their efforts. Hence these chains of sympathizers came to be known as the Underground Railway.

There were thousands of people in the North who knew little about slavery and to whom it did not seem such a terrible thing. But even they were soon stirred by reading "Uncle Tom's Cabin," a book by Mrs. Harriet Beecher Stowe, published in 1852. She wrote that she hoped the book had "done justice to that nobility, generosity, and humanity, which in many cases characterizes individuals at the South." But the southern people protested that the book was exaggerated and did not give a true picture of conditions in the South. Nevertheless, the story of Little Eva and Topsy, of Uncle Tom and his trials and his pathetic death, of the thrilling escape of Eliza and her babe and of her husband George, of Emiline and Cassy, and

"Uncle Tom's Cabin"

all the others, went to the hearts of multitudes. It was widely read, and did very much among the people of the North to increase the feeling of hatred toward slavery. Mrs. Stowe, at the end of her book, said: "And now, men and women of America, is this a thing to be trifled with, apologized for, and passed over in silence?" Thousands who had been indifferent before, now became earnest Abolitionists.

There followed quickly still other important events that drew the North and South farther apart. The Missouri Compromise had decreed that slavery should be prohibited in the territory north of 36° 30′. Yet when Kansas and Nebraska, both north of this line, were made into separate territories, the Missouri Compromise was repealed, and the people of each territory were allowed to decide for themselves whether or not they should prohibit slavery. Naturally this greatly displeased the antislavery people.

Kansas-Nebraska Law

In the struggle for the control of Kansas there was savage warfare that equaled in its horrors the raids of the Indians on the frontier settlements. Armed hordes of people, some for slavery and some against it, flocked into the territory, scattering destruction as they advanced. They burned homes, robbed the defenseless, and shot down those who attempted to oppose them. Scores of men and women were murdered in this time of strife before Kansas finally settled the burning question by voting against slavery.

Another disturbing event was the Dred Scott decision. Dred Scott was a slave living in Missouri, a slave state. His owner took him to live in the free state of Illinois and later in the free territory of Minnesota. Finally his master brought him back to Missouri. Scott claimed that he was no longer a slave, because he had lived in Illinois and Minnesota, where, under the law, slavery was prohibited. He took his case to the courts and finally to the Supreme Court of the United States. This court decided that he had no right even to bring a suit because he was not a citizen. It further declared that Congress had no right to decide the slavery question in the territories. This of course added to the indignation of the people of the free states.

Dred Scott decision

At about the same time the people of the South were angered by the expedition of John Brown. Brown was a New Englander. With his sons he went to Kansas while the attempt was being made to save that territory for freedom. He took a prominent part in the warfare of that time. Some people think that the excitement of those days drove him insane. However true this may be, he believed that if he could once arm some of the negroes, the slaves in large numbers would rally to his standard and strike for freedom.

John Brown

With this object in mind, Brown left Kansas and settled near Harpers Ferry, Virginia. In October,

1859, with a score of followers, he captured the arsenal at that place. It was a foolhardy proceeding. His little band was soon defeated, and he himself taken prisoner, tried, and hanged. While this expedition cost only a few lives, it roused the people of the South. They were sure that Brown had been prompted to his

Building in which John Brown was captured

deed by northern people, and they feared other attempts to incite the slaves to rebellion.

These events brought the situation to the breaking point. But in the meantime the question of slavery had been making and unmaking political parties. It was in 1840 that the first antislavery party, later known as the Liberty party, was formed, but it never received more than a few votes. Both the Democrats and the Whigs tried to keep slavery out of politics. In 1848 the Whigs elected the popular old soldier, General

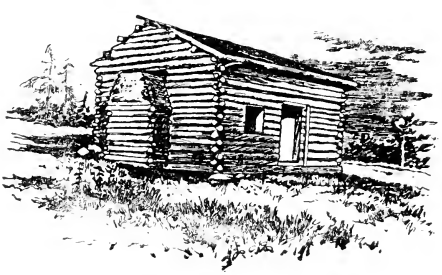
Slavery in politics

Zachary Taylor, to succeed President Polk. In 1852 the Democrats elected Franklin Pierce. The events of the next four years so stirred the people that the various antislavery groups united under the name of the Republican party. Their candidate, John C. Frémont, although not elected, received a very large vote, and the Whig party went out of existence. Again the Democrats elected their candidate, James Buchanan.

In 1858 the most distinguished man in the state of Illinois, if not in the entire nation, was Stephen A. Douglas. He had been in Congress for many years, and his brilliant oratory had won for him the title of the Little Giant. The next year his term as senator would expire. No one doubted that, as the candidate of the Democrats, he would be overwhelmingly reëlected.

Stephen A. Douglas

But from the ranks of the new Republican party



The birthplace of Lincoln, in Kentucky

there arose a man of the people, Abraham Lincoln. He had grown up in the rough pioneer life of the

"backwoods." Circumstances were so hard that he could get little schooling. Books were scarce in the homes of the frontier, and the first volume that Lincoln owned was a "Life of Washington." It cost him three days' labor to acquire it.

Abraham Lincoln

Lincoln early showed an ambition for learning and an ability to think clearly. In time he made a name for himself throughout his state as a clever lawyer. Now he was put forth by his party to contest the election of Douglas as senator from Illinois.

When Lincoln was nominated he made one of the most important speeches ever delivered on the subject of slavery. It was then that he said: "A house divided against itself cannot stand. I believe this government cannot endure permanently half slave and half free. I do not expect the Union to be dissolved. I do not expect the house to fall, but I do expect it will cease to be divided. It will become all one thing or all the other." Most of Lincoln's friends tried to persuade him that his chances would be better if he did not speak so harshly against slavery. But he insisted on saying what he believed was right and true.

Lincoln challenged his opponent to a series of public debates. His challenge was accepted. The two candidates spoke in seven different places in the state. This Lincoln-Douglas debate has gone into our history as the greatest event of its kind. People by tens of thousands

Lincoln-Douglas debate

came from all directions to see for themselves this contest between the Little Giant and the tall, rawboned country lawyer who had dared to dispute with him.

Douglas defended his own views with wonderful skill. Lincoln kept pushing him more and more on the slavery issue. One of his thrusts was: "I agree with Judge Douglas that the negro is not my equal in many respects. But in the right to eat bread, without the leave of anybody else, which his own hand earns, he is my equal, and the equal of Judge Douglas, and the equal of every living man." When it finally came to a vote, it was found that Douglas was elected senator, but by a close count.

Although Lincoln had been defeated, his speeches in this campaign made him one of the foremost Republicans in the country. When, in 1860, the Republican convention met to nominate a candidate for President, it soon settled upon Lincoln. In the Democratic party there was a split, and two different candidates were nominated. Still a fourth candidate was put in the field by men dissatisfied with the other three. Lincoln was elected.

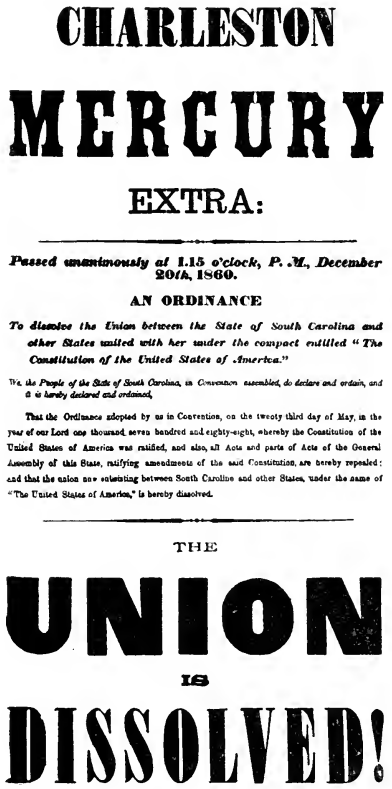
Election of Lincoln

This was the signal for the slavery forces to take action. In December, 1860, the state of South Carolina seceded, declaring that "the union now subsisting between South Carolina and the other states, under the name of the United States of America, is hereby dissolved." At last the people of the United States were brought face to face with the question which

had been argued throughout seventy-one years — the question of "state sovereignty." States, before this, had claimed the right to secede and to set up separate and independent governments, but never before had a state declared that it actually had seceded.

Here was the most vital issue that has ever confronted the American government. Here was a state claiming that it had already left the Union. Did mere claiming make it so? If the national government could force the state back, by warfare if need be, it would prove that the state had made a false claim. On the other hand, if the state succeeded against the forces of the federal government, its claim would have to be recognized. The atti-

The claim of the South



CHARLESTON

MERCURY

EXTRA:

Passed unanimously at 1.15 o'clock, P. M., December 20th, 1860.

AN ORDINANCE

To dissolve the Union between the State of South Carolina and other States united with her under the compact entitled "The Constitution of the United States of America."

We, the *People of the State of South Carolina*, in *Convention assembled, do declare and ordain, and it is hereby declared and ordained,*

That the Ordinance adopted by us in Convention, on the twenty third day of May, in the year of our Lord one thousand, seven hundred and eighty-eight, whereby the Constitution of the United States of America was ratified, and also, all Acts and parts of Acts of the General Assembly of this State, ratifying amendments of the said Constitution, are hereby repealed: and that the union now subsisting between South Carolina and other States, under the name of "The United States of America," is hereby dissolved.

THE

UNION

IS

DISSOLVED!

Newspaper bulletin issued after the secession of South Carolina

tude of the state was: We are a separate nation; if you attack us you are waging war on a neighbor. The attitude of the federal government was: You are a group of people in rebellion; cease to rebel or we must wage war upon you as rebels.

The next three months were perhaps the most critical in our history. Twenty-eight years before, when South Carolina threatened secession, President Jackson took determined action. It might have been expected now that President Buchanan would do the same thing and bring South Carolina promptly to terms. But he did not. He was a Democrat, and in March was to be succeeded by a Republican President. It was hard to tell just what the people of the North would want their President to do. How far would they support him if he took action to reduce South Carolina to submission? Even many people who had been bitter Abolitionists were now frightened by the turn in events. Among these was Horace Greeley, the editor of the New York "Tribune." He said: "If the Cotton States shall decide that they can do better out of the Union than in it, we insist on letting them go in peace."

When many of the Republican leaders were talking in this way, it is not to be wondered that Buchanan, a Democrat, should be perplexed as to what should be done. Indeed it seemed to be no longer a question of Democrat or Republican. Many men of both parties were taking

The Confederate States

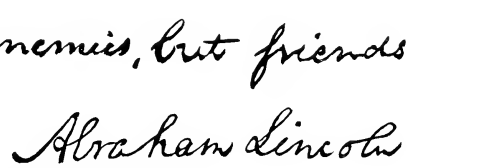
a firm stand for the Union. Many others were looking at the problem much as Greeley did. In the meantime the South took advantage of this condition of affairs. By February, 1861, six other states had followed the example of South Carolina. The seven proceeded to unite under the name of the Confederate States of America. In those states there were several forts and arsenals belonging to the United States government. By seizing some of these, the Confederates got possession of large quantities of supplies and ammunition, so that if war came they would be prepared.

As the days went on, the country saw that much depended upon the incoming President. People looked forward anxiously to see what he would do. Slavery was at the root of the trouble, yet Lincoln saw very clearly that the question now was not "Shall we abolish slavery?" but "Have any states the right to secede?" Lincoln kept assuring the people that he wished no war and no bloodshed. Nevertheless he showed that he would not compromise on the question of secession.

Inauguration of Lincoln

Not until he was inaugurated could Lincoln speak with authority. On March 4, 1861, he became President. His inaugural address set the issue squarely before the people. "The Union of these states is perpetual," said he. "No state upon its own mere motion can lawfully get out of the Union. . . . . I shall take care,

as the Constitution itself expressly enjoins upon me, that the laws of the Union be faithfully executed in all the states." He concluded with: "We are not enemies, but friends. We must not be enemies. Though passion may have strained, it must not break our bonds of affection."



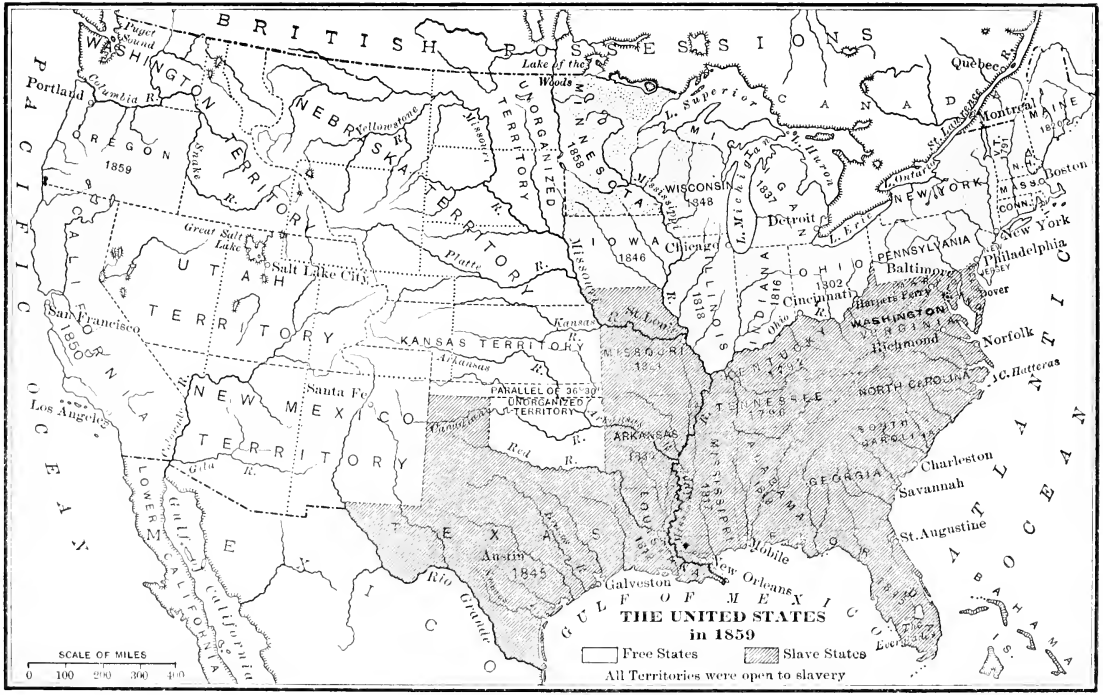
Part of Lincoln's inaugural address

During the next few weeks Lincoln waited patiently for events to shape themselves. He saw that the national government would have a great advantage if the South made the first move in the game of warfare. His thought evidently was, "Let the South fire the first gun and thus put herself before the world as rebelling against the federal government." And so he waited.

FOR CAREFUL STUDY

There were many different opinions about the right and wrong of slavery, and in time this question became the most important matter upon which political parties differed.

In the beginning, when the Constitution was adopted, certain compromises were made, and it was supposed that the slavery question was settled. The states were about evenly divided between slave states


BRITISH POSSESSIONS
CANADA
PACIFIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
GULF OF MEXICO
MEXICO
WASHINGTON TERRITORY
OREGON 1859
NEBRASKA TERRITORY
UNORGANIZED TERRITORY
MINNESOTA 1858
WISCONSIN 1848
MICHIGAN 1837
IOWA 1846
ILLINOIS 1818
INDIANA 1816
OHIO 1802
NEW YORK
PENNSYLVANIA
NEW JERSEY
MAINE 1820
VT. 1791
N.H.
MASS.
CONN.
CALIFORNIA 1850
UTAH TERRITORY
KANSAS TERRITORY
MISSOURI 1821
KENTUCKY 1792
TENNESSEE 1796
NORTH CAROLINA
SOUTH CAROLINA
GEORGIA
ALABAMA
MISSISSIPPI 1817
LOUISIANA 1812
ARKANSAS 1837
NEW MEXICO TERRITORY
TEXAS 1845
LOWER CALIFORNIA
Gulf of California
Puget Sound
Portland
Columbia R.
Snake R.
Great Salt Lake
Salt Lake City
San Francisco
Los Angeles
Santa Fe
Gila R.
Colorado R.
Yellowstone R.
Missouri R.
Platte R.
Kansas R.
Arkansas R.
Canadian R.
Red R.
Rio Grande
Austin
Galveston
New Orleans
Mobile
St. Louis
Chicago
Detroit
L. Superior
L. Michigan
L. Huron
L. Erie
L. Ontario
St. Lawrence R.
Quebec
Montreal
Boston
New York
Philadelphia
Baltimore
Harpers Ferry
Dover
Cincinnati
Ohio R.
Richmond
Norfolk
C. Hatteras
Charleston
Savannah
St. Augustine
Everglades
BAHAMA IS.
Lake of the Woods
Mississippi R.
Rio Grande
THE UNITED STATES in 1859
Free States
Slave States
All Territories were open to slavery
SCALE OF MILES
0 100 200 300 400

and free states, and for many years, as new states came in, this balance was carefully kept.

From time to time several laws concerning the slavery question were passed. Among these were the Missouri Compromise, the Compromise of 1850, and the Kansas-Nebraska Law.

In spite of the attempts to satisfy both sides, the feeling of antagonism between the northern free states and the southern slave states kept steadily growing. This brought forward another question: Could a state go out of the Union by its own will, just as it had entered by its own will? The right to do so was called the right of secession. As the strife between the slavery and antislavery people became more and more bitter, many on both sides claimed this right for their states.

Finally, when Abraham Lincoln was elected President, in 1860, the South took it as a signal for action. Seven of the states seceded and formed the Confederate States of America.

FACTS TO BE MEMORIZED

By the Missouri Compromise, 1820, Missouri was admitted as a slave state, while slavery was prohibited in all the rest of the Louisiana Territory north of 36° 30′.

By the Compromise of 1850, California was admitted into the Union as a free state, and Utah and New Mexico were allowed to decide for themselves whether they would be free or slave.

The Kansas-Nebraska Law, 1854, repealed the Missouri Compromise and allowed the territories to decide the slave question for themselves.

The Dred Scott Decision, 1857, permitted slavery in all the territories.

Bibliography

Lincoln. — Baldwin: Abraham Lincoln.
Brooks: True Story of Abraham Lincoln.
Coffin: Abraham Lincoln.
Moores: Life of Abraham Lincoln.
Nicolay: Boys' Life of Abraham Lincoln.
Sparks: Men who made the Nation.
Tarbell: He knew Lincoln.
Tarbell: Counsel for the Defense.
Webster. — Foote and Skinner: Makers and Defenders of America.

CHAPTER VI

THE CIVIL WAR

WE do not have to go far into the history of England to learn that Englishmen have always been very jealous of their rights. The English have a saying that every man's house is his castle. For centuries the men of England have stood firm in defense of these "castles," however magnificent or however humble they may be. So when Englishmen came across the Atlantic and settled in America they brought with them this spirit of insisting upon their rights. We have seen how, as colonists, they defended their rights even against their own English government. We have learned how they resisted the authority of the mother country, and finally gained their independence.

The spirit of the South

It was this spirit that prevailed once again in the days of 1861. Both North and South believed that they were right. The North insisted that the nation should remain united. The South insisted that it had the right to withdraw in peace from the Union. The people of the South were prompted by the same spirit that had led their forefathers to throw off the authority of England. They felt that they must

throw off the authority of the United States. That authority was, they believed, being used against them. So the Confederate States declared that if the United States should invade their territory, it would be an act of war by one nation upon another. Thus they hoped to be left to go their separate way in peace.

This hope was not without foundation. In the first place they had reason to believe that the Confederacy would grow in area. Other states would come over to their side. Again, they expected that the countries of Europe would speedily recognize the Confederate States as an independent nation. England and her neighbors, it was supposed, would be glad to see the growing American union shattered and replaced by a number of smaller countries. Thus it might be easy for European nations to gain more territory in America. Moreover, the Europeans profited by trade with the South. Especially, they needed the cotton that was produced there. So they would not want their supply of it cut off or their trade interfered with in other ways by a war. In the third place, the Southerners counted on the fact that they had many friends in the North. They took it for granted that the northern people in general did not care whether or not the South set up for itself. At any rate, they could not believe that these people cared enough for the Union to go to war to preserve it.

The plans of the South

But the hopes of the South were not all to be

realized. Some states that they had expected would secede disappointed them. Foreign nations proved to be in no hurry to take sides. And finally, the Confederates were much mistaken in the attitude of the North. They had forgotten that their northern brothers had the same independent spirit that they had. When once aroused, the northern folk could be just as determined as they themselves were.

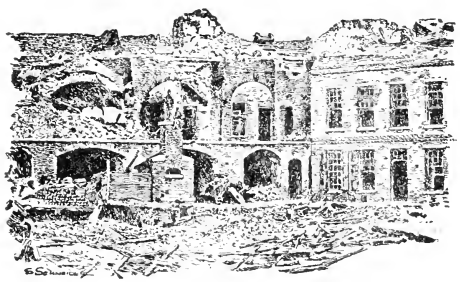
At first, success seemed sure and easy. The seceded states acted on the theory that all forts, arsenals, stores, ammunition, and other equipment for war, on land or on sea, that were to be found within their states belonged by right to them. So they proceeded to take possession. In nearly every case this was easy enough, because most of the men in command were Southerners and in sympathy with the Confederate movement.

But there was one officer who did not take this view. Major Anderson had command of the United States forces in the harbor of Charleston, South Carolina. He was a Kentuckian by birth, and his wife was a Georgian; yet he felt that so long as he was in the army of the United States he must defend his command against any attack by the South. Anderson's force of less than one hundred men occupied Fort Sumter, located on an island in the harbor. The governor of South Carolina insisted that no United States troops should be intrenched in this way within his state. However, he hesitated to

Fort Sumter

act. He called upon the Confederate government to advise him. President Davis of the Confederacy and his cabinet were at Montgomery, Alabama, their capital. They discussed the governor's request very seriously. One of them said: "The firing upon that fort will inaugurate a civil war greater than any the world has yet seen; and I do not feel competent to advise you." Thus they hesitated. But the impatient southern people would not let them delay for long.

The Confederates made many attempts to induce Anderson to withdraw his troops peaceably. Then they served notice upon him that they would shell the fort. This they could do from the neighboring harbor forts which they already held. In the meantime President Lincoln was trying to send reënforcements and supplies to the beleaguered garrison, but without success. Anderson and his men were soon subjected



Part of Fort Sumter after the bombardment

to a hot fire from powerful guns in forts so distant that the guns of Fort Sumter could not reach them in

return. For two days the bombardment continued. Time after time the shells set fire to the barracks. The magazines were threatened. The gallant defenders were nearly suffocated in flame and smoke. Finally, when ammunition ran low and food gave out, Major Anderson surrendered.

Lincoln's call for troops

At last had occurred the event for which President Lincoln, even against the advice of his counselors, had so patiently been waiting. The American flag had been fired upon. War had begun; but it was the Confederacy that had fired the first shot. How vain had been the hope of the South that the people of the North would not care if it seceded! The news of Sumter sent a thrill through the nation. Immediately Lincoln issued a proclamation calling for 75,000 troops. The response was prompt and eager.

Confidence of the South

Now that war was fairly on, the hope and enthusiasm of the southern people ran high. They were confident of early victory. First of all, they had even more reason than before to expect that several other states would join the seven already in the Confederacy. Secondly, they were now more hopeful that European nations would interfere and recognize their independence. They expected to secure just such aid as France had given the struggling colonists in the days of the Revolution. Finally, the Confederates had some advantages from the military standpoint.

For many years they had been looking forward to war and so were better prepared than was the North. The leading men of the South led outdoor lives and were fond of sport and the handling of arms. Many of them were army officers. They were high-spirited and ready to match their strength with their northern rivals. Again, the slaves could be left at home to carry on the work there, while their masters went to battle.

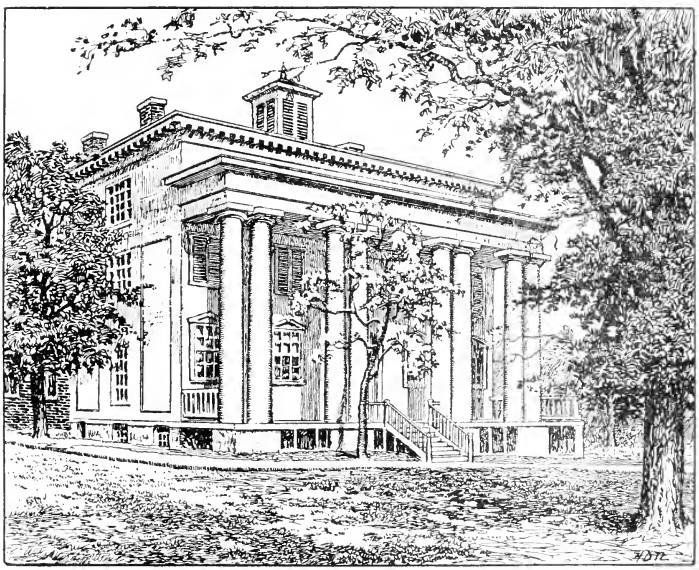
The Confederates had a further advantage in being on the defensive. They were not seeking conquest, but only asking to be let alone. Hence, all they had to do was to resist invasion. This meant that they would not have to travel far to battle. They would not have to transport armies and supplies great distances into the enemy's country. Best of all, they would be stirred by the spirit that fires men when they are defending their homes and families.

We shall now see how the South fared along each of these three lines.

The first hope of the Confederacy was that it might increase its territory. It comprised seven coast states: Texas, Louisiana, Mississippi, Alabama, and Florida, on the Gulf; and Georgia and South Carolina on the Atlantic. Several other southern states, however, were in sympathy with the Confederacy. Following the lead of Virginia, the three states immediately north of the Confederacy — Arkansas, Tennessee, and North Caro-

The first hope — increased territory

lina — promptly joined it. Richmond, Virginia, was later made the capital of the Confederacy. The gaining of Virginia was a triumph for the South, for without it the war would undoubtedly have ended much



The home of Jefferson Davis, the Confederate president, in Richmond

earlier than it did. But not all of that state was willing to secede from the Union. The people in the western part did some seceding on their own account. In order to remain true to the Federal government, they brought about the division of Virginia into two states. In 1863 West Virginia was admitted to the Union as a separate state.

Missouri, Kentucky, and Maryland, to the north of these four, were known as the Border States. For several trying weeks it was a question whether the Confederacy would gain them. But the South was doomed to disappointment. Eventually all three were saved to the Union, not without considerable strategy, however, and only after armed force had taken a part in settling the question. Moreover, as the war progressed, although the cry of the Confederacy was "On to Washington," its armies were never able to get into that city. So the Confederacy was limited to eleven states, and it is their fortunes that we are now to follow.

Second hope — foreign aid

The second hope of the Confederacy was that it might secure the aid of foreign nations, especially England. It was to England's interest to trade with the South, where she bought cotton for use in her mills. So the Confederates sent their agents to England to induce that government to aid them. But they met with no success. The United States also had its friends at work there, explaining the position of the North and enlisting the sympathy of the British people. They were able to convince the English that, although there was much talk about "state rights," the chief issue of the war was slavery. Years before this, England had abolished slavery at home and in all her colonies. She could not now bring herself to take sides with the slaveholding South.

There was one incident, however, that very nearly turned the English against the United States. Two Confederate agents — Mason and Slidell — started for England on board a British steamer, the *Trent*. Hearing of this, Captain Wilkes, of the Union navy, boarded the *Trent*, captured the two commissioners, and held them as prisoners. The people of the North were elated. But the clear-headed President saw that a serious mistake had been made. He did not forget that in 1812, we had gone to war with England for doing much the same thing that Wilkes had just done. So he gave up the prisoners and let them go on their errand.

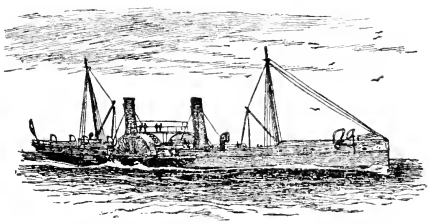
The *Trent* affair

It was one thing for the South to talk about supplying England with cotton, and quite another to carry on commerce with that or any other country. The United States did not propose to let the Confederacy have her own way in this matter. Fort Sumter had surrendered on April 14. Before that month was over the United States had declared the entire Confederate coast to be blockaded. This meant that the government undertook to prevent all vessels from entering or leaving any southern port. As the coast line was some two thousand miles in length, it was a huge undertaking. The blockade having been declared, it was of prime importance to the Union that it should be maintained.

The blockade

Much to the surprise of the Confederates, they soon found themselves thoroughly hemmed in from the sea

front. Despite the advantage of so long a coast line the South was seriously handicapped. It was an agricultural region. To secure manufactured articles it had depended chiefly upon trading its crops for them. It had comparatively few machine-shops, factories, and foundries. Thus it was almost helpless as compared with the North, whose mechanics were many and just now were very busy in providing the tools of warfare. The North soon had hundreds of vessels impressed into service. They watched the southern ports with cat-like shrewdness, ready to



A blockade runner

pounce on any Confederate or foreign ship that should try to leave or to enter.

The *Monitor* and the *Merrimac*

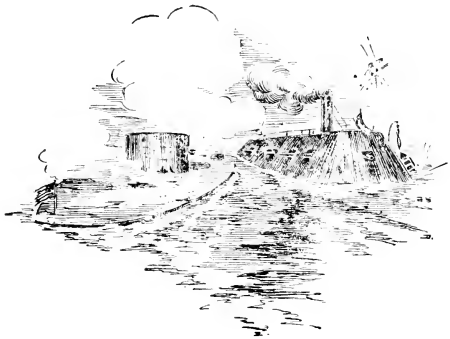
The Confederates, however, were by no means idle. On many occasions vessels called "blockade runners" managed to elude the blockading ships. Before the war had been in operation a year they struck the enemy a blow that nearly broke up the whole blockade. This happened at Norfolk, Virginia. Five northern frigates were in

command of the harbor. On the morning of March 8, 1862, the crews of these ships were startled by seeing before them a new and strange sort of craft. It lay low in the water. It had neither sails nor masts. It was propelled only by steam. In fact, it was the first ship in any navy to depend upon steam as its only motive power.

The alarm of the northern crews was increased when they opened fire. Broadside after broadside hit the curious battleship without the slightest effect. The cannon balls glanced harmlessly off its sides. The Confederates had cunningly covered their doughty defender with plates of iron. But worse was yet to follow. The *Merrimac*, for that was the name of the ship, turned, showing a sharp ram projecting from her bow, plunged into the nearest frigate, the *Cumberland*, and soon sent it to the bottom. Directing her attention to the others, she set fire to one and drove the remaining three aground. When the North heard the news from Norfolk it was dismayed and panic-stricken. Nothing, it seemed, could prevent the *Merrimac* from coming on up the Potomac and bombarding the capital, or from ending the blockade of southern ports.

But the surprises were not to be all on one side. On the morning after her startling victory the *Merrimac* sallied forth to complete her work of destruction. But this time it was her turn to wonder. In front of her was a craft even more curious than herself. A fourth her own size, with a large round turret on a low

flat body, it looked, as was said, like "a cheese-box on a raft." It too was ironclad. But it was speedier



The *Monitor* and the *Merrimac*

than the *Merrimac*, and drew much less water. Soon it was cavorting around her, running through shallow water that the *Merrimac* could not venture into, and firing as it pleased upon her iron sides.

The ingenious little boat was named the *Monitor*. It had been designed by John Ericsson, and hurriedly built in Brooklyn. It had arrived at Norfolk just in the nick of time. Neither of these ironclads could do much harm to the other, but the *Monitor* could hold the *Merrimac* in check. The fears of the North were quieted. From this time on the blockading squadrons hemmed in the Confederacy more and more. Soon her commerce was very nearly at a standstill.

The third hope of the Confederacy was that she might resist invasion. Victory might even lead her

to march into the North, there to dictate terms of peace. While operations had been going on at sea, the armies of both sides had been gathering in large numbers. They were recruited from every walk in life. There were farmers, clerks, college students, mechanics, tradesmen, — all very eager and enthusiastic, but entirely ignorant of warfare. President Lincoln said that one army was "as green as the other." The Confederates, however, had begun a few months earlier to put their army into shape. In both camps many weeks had to be spent in training and drilling the men, which made the people the more impatient to see actual war begin. Both North and South wanted news of some big battle which should prove that its side was going to make short work of the other.

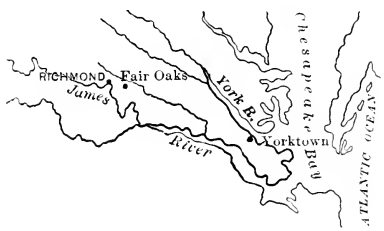
Third hope — to resist invasion

The Confederacy, now that it included Virginia, proceeded to defend this, its most northern state, from attack. In July, 1861, the Confederates, with some 30,000 men, were attacked by the Union army under General McDowell, at a little stream called Bull Run, less than fifty miles from Washington. General Beauregard was in command, and was about to suffer defeat when he was joined by forces under General J. E. Johnston. Together they retook the positions that had been lost, routed the Federal troops, and started them in a ragged retreat back toward Washington. The Confederates, though better trained than the new recruits

"On to Richmond"

of the Union army, were yet not enough better off to be able to follow them far. So both armies rested for a while.

General McClellan, succeeding McDowell, put his troops through a season of strenuous drilling, getting them ready to renew the attack. There was plenty of fighting in West Virginia and in Tennessee, but no great battle occurred in the East until the spring of 1862. Then McClellan again started the Union armies for Richmond. This time he went part way by boat and began by laying siege to Yorktown. He intended to work his way from there up to the Confederate capital. The map will show why the operations in this region are called the Peninsular campaign.



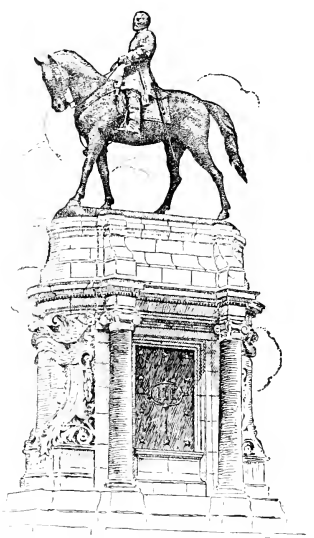
Johnston was in command at Yorktown. In order to gain time he kept McClellan outside the city for a month. During the siege the Confederates played a successful trick upon the Yankees. They cut logs into the shape of cannon, painted them black, and mounted them in their intrenchments. These "quaker guns," as they were called, completely deceived the enemy.

When Johnston could hold out no longer, he retreated toward Richmond. McClellan followed. At Fair Oaks the two armies met in battle, and the

Confederate commander, General Johnston, was wounded.

Johnston was succeeded by General Robert E. Lee, who soon became the leading military spirit of the South. Indeed, his name has gone into history as one of the greatest commanders that the world has known. Lee was a great general, planning his campaigns with wonderful skill. He had, too, a soldier's love for getting into the thick of the fight.

General Lee



Statue of General Robert E. Lee

Lee's disregard of danger was a constant source of anxiety to his men. The story is told that in one of his battles, late in the war, he galloped to the head of a column of Texas soldiers and gave the order to charge. But not a soldier would budge while their general was thus endangered. A gray-haired sergeant seized the bridle of Lee's horse and led its rider out of danger. Then with a rush and a will the charge was made.

Lee's soldiers bore him a love that amounted to worship. "Mars Robert," they affectionately called

him. Even his horse was sacred to them. His sword they reverenced:

"Forth from its scabbard, high in air
Beneath Virginia's sky —
And they who saw it gleaming there,
And knew who bore it, knelt to swear
That where that sword led they would dare
To follow — and to die."*

General Jackson

Another Southern general who was making his name a word to strike terror in the hearts of the Federal soldiers, was Thomas J. Jackson. It was in the battle of Bull Run that his brigade held its ground against the terrible onslaught of the enemy, and an officer in admiration exclaimed: "See where Jackson stands like a stone wall." So Stonewall Jackson he was often called.

Just now Jackson was operating in the Shenandoah valley, in Western Virginia. He pushed the Union forces, under General Banks, back to the Potomac, and persistently worried Washington. The Federal government, in its alarm, kept a large army about the capital to defend it from the unknown dangers that threatened. Thus McClellan was deprived of the reënforcements which he thought were necessary to the work of his campaign.

While McClellan waited, Jackson suddenly joined Lee. Together they attacked McClellan's army in the

* Father Ryan: The Sword of Robert Lee.

neighborhood of Richmond. Here occurred several bloody clashes, known as the Seven Days' Battles, in which thousands of men were lost to each side. Lee captured many prisoners and inflicted as much injury upon the enemy as he himself suffered.

Seven Days' Battles

Lee next tried to turn the tide of war northward. He thought that the people of Maryland were in sympathy with the South, and that they would help him and his army. So he decided to cross the Potomac well above Washington, and carry the war into the North, hoping to circle back and surround the Federal capital. At the beginning all was favorable to him. On the way to the Potomac he met and defeated General Pope at the second battle of Bull Run. Then he crossed into Maryland and was followed by McClellan, who defeated him in the battle of Antietam, one of the most terrible clashes of the war. Lee retreated into Virginia, and later was attacked at Fredericksburg. He held his own, and compelled the Federal army to fall back toward their capital. This was in December. Thus, at the close of the year 1862, the Confederates were as well intrenched in Virginia as they had been at the outbreak of the war more than a year and a half before.

Antietam and Fredericksburg

While this was going on in the East, the Confederacy was struggling to maintain its western and northern limits. It wished very much to hold the

Mississippi River. If that should fall into Union hands, the South, thus cut in two, would be badly crippled. But the Confederates had to meet many assaults on this great waterway. Near the mouth of the river was the large and important city of New Orleans, strongly protected against capture. Two heavy chains lay stretched across the river below the city. Just above

Capture of New Orleans

The Farragut Monument, in New York

them were two forts whose cross-fire could be trained upon any boats passing up the river. Above the forts

was a strong fleet, which included two ironclads. It seemed as if the city were impregnable and that the Federals would be foolhardy indeed to attempt to run up the river.

But there were daring men at hand to undertake this very task. Captain Farragut, with a fleet of fifty vessels, determined to accomplish it. He managed to get many of his ships up the river to a point near the chains. Then he dispatched two gunboats, which, stealing up at dark, succeeded in breaking the chains. There followed, during the calm, starlit night, a sudden rush past the two forts. The forts thundered their bolts upon the daring fleet. Boats loaded with pitch-pine were set afire and floated toward them. The Confederate vessels from up the river bore down upon them and engaged them in close combat. The battle raged until morning. Then, in spite of the damage done to the Union fleet, it was seen sailing up the river, having victoriously passed the forts. The fall of the city was inevitable. General Butler, with a large army, followed Farragut into New Orleans, taking possession on May 1, 1862.

Forts Henry and Donelson

The Confederates were able to hold out a little longer in the northwestern part of their territory. They had tried to keep their forces in the field in Kentucky and Tennessee, but were driven back. Halleck, the Union general, early in 1862, centered his attack upon two of their important strongholds, Fort Henry and Fort Donelson.

Although one of these was on the Tennessee River and the other on the Cumberland, they were but twelve miles apart. Thus the line of defense between them was a very important gateway to the South.

General Grant, aided by Commodore Foote's gunboats, was sent to capture the forts. Fort Henry was easily taken, but the battle around Donelson raged fiercely for three days. Finally the Confederates asked for terms of surrender, to which Grant made his famous reply: "No terms except unconditional and immediate surrender can be accepted." On February 16 the fort yielded, and thousands of prisoners were surrendered. The South had suffered its first great defeat.

At Shiloh, farther up the Tennessee River, Grant held his own in a fierce two days' battle, where 25,000 men were lost to the two armies. Among these was General A. S. Johnston, who had commanded the Confederate forces in the West. The next day Commodore Foote captured Island No. 10, in the Mississippi River. This opened the river down to the Confederate stronghold at Vicksburg. Thus, in the West the close of 1862 found the South still undivided at the Mississippi. That is, it held possession of the river at Vicksburg and for some distance south.

On the first day of 1863 President Lincoln took action in a matter that he had long been considering. From the beginning of the war he had repeatedly asserted that it was waged to save the Union.

Slavery was not the issue. But he came to see that slavery was a great aid to the South in carrying on the war. Hence, to free the slaves would be a war measure that would help to defeat the South. So he issued an Emancipation Proclamation. In it he declared that all the slaves — more than three millions in number — in all the states of the Confederacy should be forever free.

Emancipation Proclamation

The Southerners were not at all alarmed by this proclamation. Instead, they ridiculed it. In scorn they declared that the mere word of the President of the United States, whose authority they did not recognize, could not set free their slaves. They became all the more intense in their determination to drive the Union armies out of their territory and even to carry the war into the enemy's country. In May Lee was attacked by the Federals, now under General Hooker, at Chancellorsville, but he drove them back terribly defeated. Then he started for the North, determined not to stop until he had dictated terms of peace in Philadelphia or New York.

Lee's start for the North

It is no wonder that at this springtime of 1863, the Confederates believed that their hopes were about to be realized.

FOR CAREFUL STUDY

There was only one way to disprove the right of secession. When a state claimed that it had seceded,

the Federal government could successfully dispute the claim only by force, — only by conquering the people that resisted its authority.

The vicinity of Washington

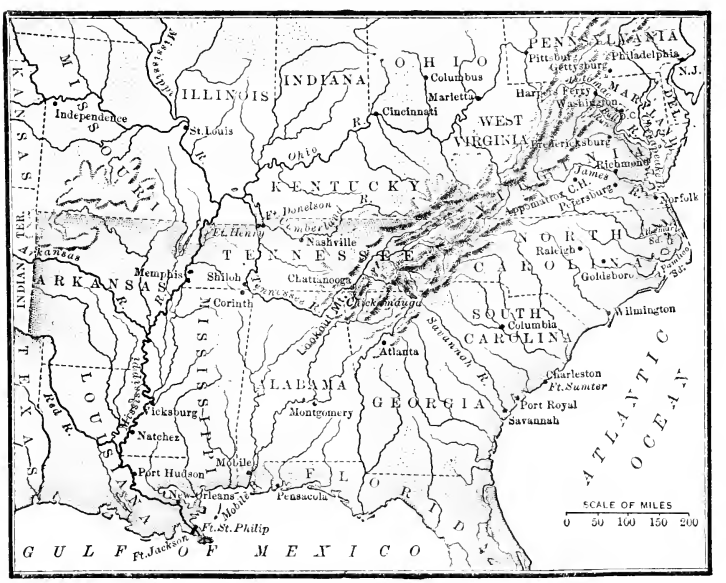
The secession of the seven Confederate states led to war. The South began the fighting by taking Fort Sumter, on April 14, 1861, claiming that it was part of her territory and that the United States troops had no right there. This was followed by four years of bitter, bloody, civil strife.

The hopes of the Confederate States ran high. Four other states joined them; they expected European nations to help them; and they were sure they could keep the Union armies out of their territory. But they were to be disappointed. The nations of the world refused to recognize them, and remained neutral throughout the war. Actual warfare took place almost entirely on southern soil, and for the Southerners it became a fight for the defense of their homes.

The Union soon had the southern ports closely blockaded; and the *Monitor* was able to withstand the attacks of the *Merrimac*, in the first battle between ironclad vessels.

On land the fortunes of the war varied. In the East the Confederate cry was, "On to Washington," and the Confederate armies seriously threatened that city more than once. The Union cry was, "On to Richmond," and the Federals fought steadily through northern Virginia, but were stubbornly repulsed. The year 1863 found the two sides practically at a deadlock between the two capitals.

In the meantime, however, the Confederacy had suffered in the West. It had lost New Orleans and much of the Mississippi River. But it still held Vicksburg, the key that the Federals must gain if they were to unlock the river to Northern control.



The Confederate states

On January 1, 1863, President Lincoln issued the Emancipation Proclamation, declaring that all the slaves in the Confederate states were forever free.

FACTS TO BE MEMORIZED

The Civil War, 1861–1865, was caused by slavery, and more directly by the secession of the southern states.

In the Civil War the plan of the North was to blockade southern ports and thus cut off supplies from the Confederacy; to open up the Mississippi and thus divide the Confederacy; and to capture Richmond, the seat of the Confederate government.

The *Monitor-Merrimac* engagement, 1862, prevented the Confederates from breaking up the blockade of the southern ports.

By Lincoln's Emancipation Proclamation, January 1, 1863, the slaves in the seceding states were declared free.

Bibliography

General. — Abbott: Battle Fields of '61.
Blaisdell: Stories of the Civil War.
Coffin: Boys of '61.
Page: Two Little Confederates.

CHAPTER VII

THE TURNING OF THE TIDE

LET us pause for a brief review of the situation, especially as it looked to the people of the North. When the war opened, in the early part of 1861, they little doubted that it would soon be settled — in a few months at the most. They thought of the South, not at all as a powerful nation, but merely as a set of rebels. All that was needed, they believed, was to march an army or two into the Southland and bring the Confederacy to terms. Thus they would quickly put an end to the rebellion. But, as we have seen, they were soon to learn that it was not to be any such easy matter. Indeed, it was presently evident that the struggle would be fierce and determined. It might last for years. Again and again a northern army was sent against the Confederate capital, only to be thrown back with great loss. The North was thoroughly discouraged.

The situation in review

Home after home was being made desolate. The fathers and older brothers were giving their lives at the front. Sturdy small boys, in their efforts to fill vacant places, grew into sudden manhood. Day by

day the women waited at home, doing their part in the defense of the Union. With patient hands they made roll after roll of bandages. Their choicest linens and even the table damasks were sacrificed to bind up the wounds of the soldiers. Those who lived near the hospitals were constantly busy making jellies and broths for the sick. After each battle, with eyes that could scarcely read through blinding tears, these suffering women searched the columns of the missing, dreading to find therein the name of some dear one. And yet the war dragged on.

A Union soldier

It was not only the defeats in the field that caused the Union leaders anxiety. There were many people even in the North who did not believe in the war. They really sympathized with the South and rejoiced when the Federal arms met reverses. These people were called Copperheads, — the copperhead is a venomous snake, — and some of them wore as a badge the head of the Goddess of Liberty cut out of an old-fashioned copper cent. And it was not only sympathy with the enemy that the government feared. Plots to give them real help were laid in the midst of the

Union states. Then there was Canada at the north. It might be easy for Confederate allies to make raids into the United States from across the northern boundary and cause much damage.

As the war progressed, another difficulty faced the people of the North. The first call for troops had been answered heartily by enthusiastic thousands. But as more and more men were needed, not enough volunteered, and it became necessary to get them by conscription, or draft. That is, instead of asking men to serve, the government ordered them into service whether they wanted to go or not. This angered a great many, and in some cases they fought against the draft. The most serious of these draft riots occurred in New York in the summer of 1863, where much property was damaged and several hundred lives were lost.

Draft riots

More than all this, the war was costing a million dollars a day. What was far worse, it was costing the lives of thousands of the best men of the nation. So, after every defeat, people would ask: "What is the use of wasting more men and more money in a losing fight? Why not let the South go its own way and let us have peace?"

Despite all discouragements, the patient and masterful Lincoln, and some of the other statesmen about him, kept up hope. If the people would only remain loyal and support the war, there were many reasons why a united North ought surely to win in

the end. Cruel and costly as the war was to both sides, the North was standing it much better than was the South. Its population was between two and three times that of the South, and thus the cost in men and money was shared by a much larger number of people.

Effects of the war on the South

In their homes the southern people were feeling the effects of the war even more keenly than were the people of the North. Nearly all their fighting men were now under arms and away from home. They, too, had to draft men into service. Day by day the blockade was tightening its grasp around the seacoast and cutting off their imports. So far, the war had been fought almost entirely on southern soil, and the ruins of beautiful southern homes marked its path. Yet under these burdens their spirits bore up wonderfully well.

A Confederate soldier

Especially were the southern women rising nobly to meet the situation. Life for them was sadly changed since the days of peace and plenty. Many were obliged to act as the head of the family and manage the home and plantation. This meant directing the work of the slaves in the field,

and, by all sorts of contrivances, keeping the negroes as well as their own families, fed and clothed. It was no easy task. Where were they to get material for clothing? They could no longer import it from foreign lands. The Southerners had never manufactured much for themselves, so they had to go back to primitive ways. Every household became a miniature factory. Old spinning wheels and hand looms that had not been used for generations were hauled out of the garrets. Patiently and cheerfully the women set about learning the long-forgotten arts of carding and spinning and weaving.

The ladies could now pay little attention to fashion. They were glad if they could supply themselves and their slaves and the thousands of soldiers in the field with simple homespun clothing and homemade shoes and hats. They learned to make wicker baskets of willow branches. They learned to tan leather, using the skins of swine and even of dogs. They learned to make various substitutes for oil lamps and candles. In hundreds of other ways they proved true the old adage that "necessity is the mother of invention."

They learned, too, to make their agriculture meet their new needs. They raised less cotton and more rice, sugar, corn, wheat, and other food crops. There was one crop that they had heretofore scorned, but now were learning to appreciate. This was the peanut, or groundnut. Peanuts were soon raised in large quantities, and used in many ways. They were

eaten, they were fed to pigs to fatten them, and even the peanut oil was used for lamps.

The war was costing the Confederates as well as the North much money. To help meet expenses the government taxed the people one tenth of their cotton crop. But the Confederacy could not pay its bills without borrowing. So it issued paper money. As the war progressed, people became more and more doubtful as to whether the Confederacy would live to pay back any of what it had borrowed. As a result, they were afraid to take the paper money in place of gold and silver, and when they did, it was only at a great discount. For instance, coffee cost in Confederate money fifty dollars a pound and flour several hundred dollars a barrel. A newspaper, printed perhaps on a piece of wrapping paper or wall paper, cost a dollar, and everything else was in proportion.

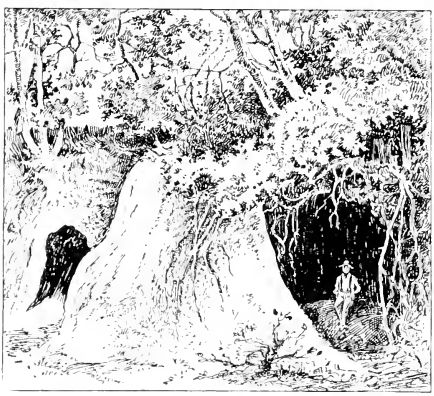
Confederate money

Conditions were trying for everybody, but worst of all for those families who lived in the invaded parts of the country. The Union soldiers, sweeping through the land, often took food and other supplies from them. Many saw their houses burned, and were obliged to flee to some stronghold or to some district not yet invaded.

Trials of the homeless

One of the places to which people came for shelter was Vicksburg. This city, situated on a hill at a bend in the Mississippi and protected by strong fortifications, was supposed to be impregnable. But before

long the people who gathered there would have been glad to be elsewhere. When the city was besieged by Grant's forces, life became anything but peaceful. The shrieking shells began to roar and tear into town. The people took to cave-dwelling, like those of long ago. Holes were dug into the earth on the sides of the hills away from the firing. They were small and damp, and in constant danger of caving in and burying the inhabitants. One lady tells of her experiences in a cave the floor of which was shaped like the letter T. In one end of the cross space was a bed, and in the other, a hole some two feet deeper than the floor. This hole was the only place where there was room to stand, and she says: "When tired of sitting in other portions of my residence, I bowed myself into it, and stood impassively resting at full height." So many were the caves that they "reminded one very much of the numberless holes that swallows make in summer."



Caves used during the siege of Vicksburg

The people lived chiefly on corn bread and bacon,

and were lucky to get this three times a day. They were even glad to vary their diet with mule meat. In fact, the soldiers defending the city preferred the fresh mule meat to the bacon and salt rations. So the commissaries killed a number of mules each day. The eating hours were very irregular, because all the cooking had to be done outside the caves when there was a lull in the falling of the shells.

Great as were the sacrifices which the Southerners were making, they could not keep on forever. It was on this that the Federal government counted. The North hoped to be able to wear the Southerners out, even if it could not immediately conquer them. The general plan of the war was to tighten the blockade all along the coasts of the Confederacy, to seize the rest of the Mississippi River, and then with the armies to push in from the north and west.

Plans of the North

It seemed that the North, having more men, more money, more resources of every kind, must surely win sooner or later. And yet, in spite of all this, in the early summer of 1863, here was Lee, rapidly marching a determined, well-disciplined army across Maryland and into Pennsylvania. The North was almost in a panic of fear.

The Union army sent to oppose Lee was put under the command of General Meade. For a few days the two armies played for advantage of position. Finally they clashed at Gettysburg, Pennsylvania, not far

from the Maryland line. Here, beginning July 1, was fought one of the fiercest and most famous of the world's great battles. It raged for three days. In the first maneuvering the Federals were defeated, and suffered a severe loss in the death of one of their gallant officers, General Reynolds. They were badly mixed up in the streets of the town and many were taken prisoners. But order was soon restored in the Union forces, and their troops placed in important positions on a line of hills near the town. Though they were outplayed at some points they held the hills against the valiant charges of the Confederates.

Gettysburg

One of the monuments on the Gettysburg battlefield

On the third day the indomitable Lee, in desperation, hurled his men upon the Union intrenchments on Cemetery Ridge. Despite the awful fire from the Union guns, the attack was steady and gallant. A few of the men actually reached the breastworks and boldly planted their flags upon them. But it could be for only a moment. The equal bravery, the better posi-

tion, and the greater force of the Federals were bound to tell. Their artillery and infantry fire from all sides centered upon the heroic charging soldiers and cut them down by thousands. By the close of July 3 the great battle was over. But with what frightful loss! The killed and wounded and missing on both sides reached 50,000. Four months later President Lincoln dedicated a portion of the battlefield "as a final resting place for those who gave their lives that our nation might live."

Following the battle of Gettysburg, the Confederates withdrew southward, never again to carry the war into the northern states. The people of the North were greatly relieved at this turn in the tide. The news of Gettysburg had just reached them when, from the Mississippi valley, came other wonderful tidings. On July 4 Vicksburg, after forty-seven days of siege, had surrendered to Grant. Soon the Federal gunboats controlled the entire length of the river. At last the Confederacy was cut in two. From this time forward there was little warfare west of the river. The Union steadily pushed its conquering troops eastward. Tighter and tighter it drew the line that hemmed in the Confederacy on all sides. Still there were many fierce battles ahead, for the South was prepared to dispute bravely to the last every inch of her ground.

Vicksburg

In Tennessee General Rosecrans pushed the Confederates southward until he gained possession of

Chattanooga. Near-by, at Chickamauga, however, he was defeated in one of the bloodiest battles of the war. The redeeming feature of the battle was the daring stand of General Thomas, who ranged his men on a rocky horseshoe-shaped hill. Against this position the Confederates hurled themselves in repeated assaults, only to meet with a steady repulse. So solid did the Union general hold his ranks that he earned for himself the title of the Rock of Chickamauga.

Tennessee

It was not long before Grant arrived at Chattanooga, and took command. Well reënforced, he was ready, toward the end of November, to sally forth against the Confederate army which occupied strong positions on the surrounding hills. At every point the Federals won. Especially picturesque was the Battle above the Clouds, waged by Hooker's men, who fought their way to a point high up on Lookout Mountain. The victory at Chattanooga was a very important gain to the Federals, for it gave them control of almost the entire state of Tennessee. It is worth remembering, too, that in this battle, the four Union generals, Grant, Sherman, Sheridan, and Thomas, fought together for the only time. From now on the history of the war is largely the history of the exploits of these great leaders.

In March, 1864, the position of Lieutenant General was created, and Grant was appointed to the office. This made him supreme in command over all the

Union forces, second only to the President, who is at all times commander in chief of the army, and of the navy as well. Grant took immediate steps to have all the armies work together under one plan. The crowding in of the Confederate lines of defense was to go on. Sherman was to push in from the west and Grant was to move on Richmond from the north. The two armies were operating at the same time, but we will follow the fortunes first of Sherman and then of Grant.

Grant in command

In May the advance began. Sherman's chief aim was to reach Atlanta, the most important city of Georgia, and occupy it. He was opposed with great skill, but finally the Confederates were forced to leave the city.

Sherman's advance

We must not forget that in managing an army there is a great deal more than just marching it around and setting it to fighting. An army, like any other gathering of men, must be clothed and fed. Indeed, some one has said that "an army travels on its stomach." It is no small task to get three meals a day for a family living at home. How much more difficult it must be to provide for thousands of men marching about from place to place. This is the business of the commissary department. The general in command has to manage his army so as to keep in touch with what is called a "base of supplies." This is some place where food and clothing are sent and stored, and

Feeding an army

from which the commissary can issue them to the moving army.

For example, while Sherman was operating against Atlanta, far-off Louisville, on the Ohio, was his base of supplies. From that city there was but a single track of railroad, running through a wild and mountainous country. Everything needed by an army of 100,000 men had to be carried over this road. This meant that 130 loaded cars had to be hauled safely every day. Here was an excellent opportunity for the enemy, especially their cavalry, to dash in, tear up the rails, destroy the cars, and cut down the bridges. Every foot of the road had to be safeguarded against attack, and the cars and roadbed kept in condition for the important work required of them.

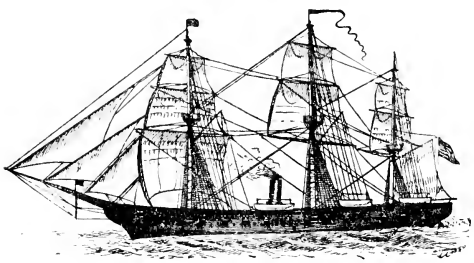
It was a long thin line for the Union army to be hanging on, and when the Confederates moved north to break it, Sherman determined to make a daring venture. He would cut loose from his base of supplies and start eastward, "living on the country." That is, instead of feeding his army with supplies brought from his base, he would have his men forage for themselves, eating what they could find as they went along. Some thought he would be foolhardy to attempt it. But there was no army to oppose him, and if he could reach the Atlantic coast he could secure supplies from the North by sea. His success would mean that the Confederacy would be cut across once again, this time from east to west.

So, on November 16, Sherman, with 62,000 men, started on his famous march to the sea. The weather was favorable and food was plentiful. In five weeks the army covered three hundred miles, cutting a strip sixty miles wide through the heart of the Confederacy. The troops destroyed railroads, captured great stores of provisions, and made desolate all the land. It is said that no living thing was found in Sherman's track, — only the chimneys were left to mark the path of his army. Finally he reached Savannah, which offered little resistance, so that, on December 21, Sherman sent to Lincoln the message: "I beg to present you as a Christmas gift the city of Savannah."

From Atlanta to the Sea

Before turning our attention to Grant, we will note two other events of importance in 1864. One occurred in August and the other in November, and both were Union victories. The first was a naval expedition against Mobile Bay in which Admiral Farragut and his crews distinguished themselves. The admiral, lashed to the rigging of his flagship, the *Hartford*, directed his fleet past the Confederate forts and engaged in a

Mobile Bay



The *Hartford*

desperate but successful conflict with an ironclad fleet beyond. The harbor was henceforth held by the Federal forces as part of the blockade.

The second event was a battle neither of armies nor of navies, but a battle of the ballots. Lincoln's term as President was nearly at its end. The people of the North opposed to the war were anxious to see him defeated for a second term. But he was reëlected by a large majority over the Democratic candidate, General McClellan, and it was then certain that the war would be continued to a finish.

Reëlection of Lincoln

And now, how had Grant been faring? Early in May, 1864, he threw his forces into the Wilderness about the Rapidan River, in Virginia. Here was fought one of the weirdest of battles. In the midst of tangled thickets the enemies struggled almost hand to hand. So awful was some of the fighting that large oak trees fell to the ground, their trunks severed by the bullets. Though the struggle lasted a long time neither side won a decisive victory.

Battle in the Wilderness

Lee kept placing his army in strong positions to bar Grant's progress. When Grant tried another road, Lee would move to a new position. Many bloody battles were fought. Lee hoped to worry and tire out his opponents so as to shake them off from their purpose to take Richmond. But Grant kept hammering away. Lee

The Shenandoah

made one move that gave the government a sudden scare. While Grant was held busy in front of him, he sent General Early down the Shenandoah valley. Early's troops traveled swiftly, and, carrying all before them, seriously threatened the city of Washington. Sheridan was sent after them, and pushed the Confederates back up the valley. The Union army so thoroughly raided the country that it was said: "If a crow wants to fly down the Shenandoah he must carry his provisions with him."

One of the stirring incidents of this campaign was Sheridan's ride from Winchester to the scene of battle where the Union army had been suddenly surprised. The men were in retreat. Sheridan, dashing up to rejoin his army, met the stragglers and shouted to them to turn. Inspired to new courage by the sight of their leader, the soldiers re-formed and rushed back to battle. Even the black horse that bore the little general from Winchester, "twenty miles away," has had his praises sung by the poet:

> "With foam and with dust the black charger was gray;
> By the flash of his eye, and the red nostril's play,
> He seemed to the whole great army to say:
> 'I have brought you Sheridan all the way
> From Winchester town to save the day!'" *

Thus Lee's attempt to distract Grant's attention failed. He held Richmond and its strong outpost, Petersburg, but by spring his position became hope-

* T. B. Read: Sheridan's Ride.

less. Sherman had started north from Savannah and was making fast marches through the Carolinas. Grant was hammering away at the south and east. Only the west was left open to the Confederate General. Forced to retreat, he started from Richmond on April 2, leaving that city at last to the Federals. Grant followed him in hot pursuit, and when Sheridan's troops got around to the west, Lee was cornered. He loved his men too well to sacrifice them in a final battle. To go to General Grant and ask for terms of surrender was to him worse than "a thousand deaths." But go he did. The interview took place at Appomattox Court House, April 9. Those who witnessed it spoke of the extreme courtesy each general showed the other. Grant, as he wrote many years later, "felt like anything rather than rejoicing at the downfall of a foe who had fought so long and valiantly."

Lee's surrender

The terms were soon agreed upon, and Lee went out to bid his soldiers farewell. "Men," he said, "we have fought through the war together. I have done my best for you. My heart is too full to say more."

The remaining Confederate armies, woefully cut down in numbers and utterly worn out, soon surrendered. It was on April 14, 1861, that Major Anderson had marched his little company out of Fort Sumter, leaving it in the hands of the South Carolina troops. On April 14, 1865, in the presence of a dis-

tinguished gathering, Anderson, now a general, raised over the fort the very flag that had been hauled down four years before, — the Stars and Stripes, the flag of the Union.

"Fold up the banners! Smelt the guns!
Love rules. Her gentler purpose runs.
A mighty mother turns in tears,
The pages of her battle years,
Lamenting all her fallen sons!"*

FOR CAREFUL STUDY

In the middle of the year 1863 came the turn in the tide of fortune which had been favoring the Confederate armies in the east. General Lee advanced northward as far as Gettysburg, Pennsylvania, but was there repulsed in one of the most severe battles of the war. His army then retreated southward, never again to invade northern soil.

At the same time Vicksburg surrendered to Grant, and the Confederacy was soon cut in two along the Mississippi River. It remained for the Federal forces to invade the Confederacy from all directions.

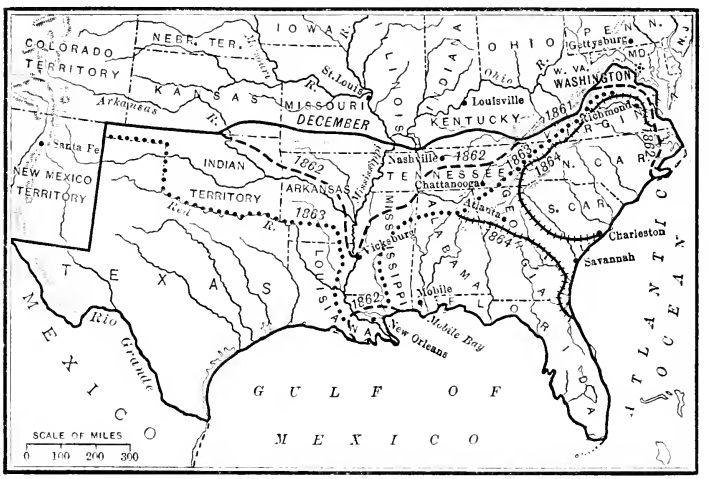
Tennessee was wrested from Confederate control in campaigns under Rosecrans, Thomas, and Grant. This was followed by the march of Sherman's army through Georgia to Savannah. Thus once again the Confederacy was cut across.

Richmond, the capital of the Confederacy, was the most important point in the east. Grant spent nearly

* Will Henry Thompson: The High Tide at Gettysburg.

a year in trying to take this city from Lee's army. After much skillful maneuvering on both sides and many fiercely contested battles, the power of the South was broken. Richmond fell, and in a week Lee surrendered.

Thus it was settled that no state or group of states could secede from the Union.



The effective Confederacy at the end of each year

FACTS TO BE MEMORIZED

The attempt of the Confederates to invade the North was ended by the battle of Gettysburg, July 1–3, 1863.

The Confederacy was divided along the Mississippi by the capture of Vicksburg, July 4, 1863.

Lee abandoned Richmond and surrendered to Grant in April, 1865.

Bibliography

Farragut. — Barnes: Midshipman Farragut.
Beebe: Four American Naval Heroes.
Foote and Skinner: Makers and Defenders of America.
Mahan: Admiral Farragut.

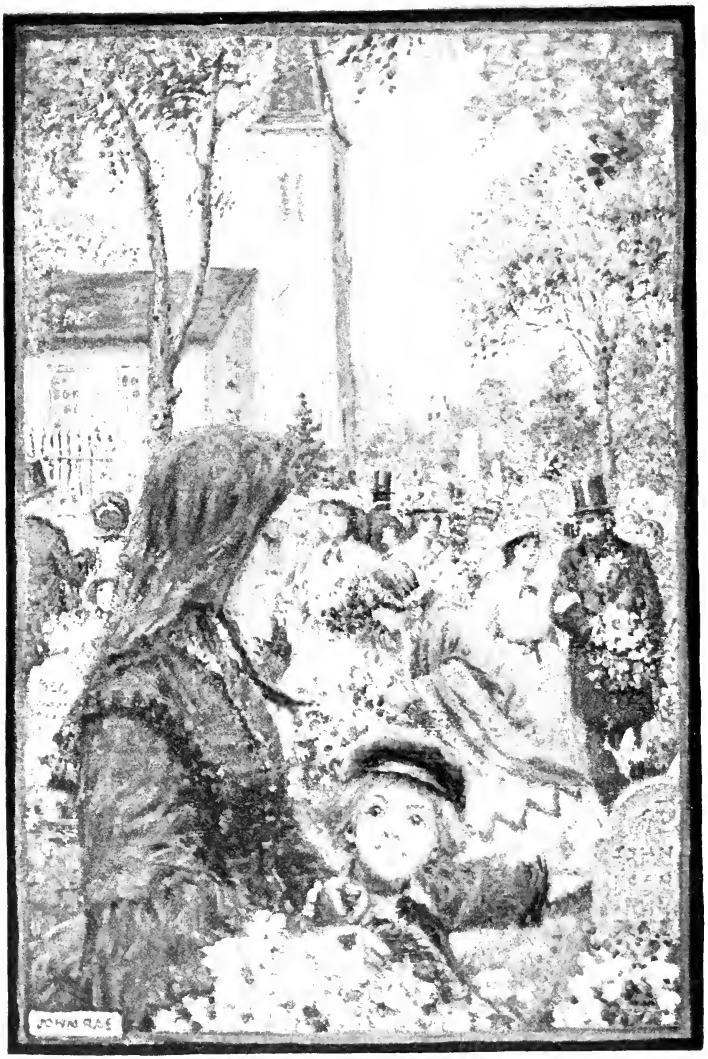
Gettysburg. — Altsheler: In Circling Camps.
Beecham: Gettysburg.
Burrage: Gettysburg and Lincoln.
Drake: Battle of Gettysburg.
Eggleston: Southern Soldier Stories.
Gordon: Reminiscences of the Civil War.
Goss: Jed.
Hale: Stories of War.
Hill: On the Trail of Grant and Lee.
Kieffer: Recollections of a Drummer Boy.
Roosevelt and Lodge: Hero Tales from American History.
Pickett: Bugles of Gettysburg.
Retold from St. Nicholas: Civil War Stories.

Grant. — Brooks: True Story of U. S. Grant.
Foote and Skinner: Makers and Defenders of America.
Goss: Life of Grant for Boys and Girls.
Nicolay: Boys' Life of Ulysses S. Grant.

Lee. — Barnes: Son of Light Horse Harry.
Foote and Skinner: Makers and Defenders of America
Johnston: Leading American Soldiers.
Trent: Robert E. Lee.
Whitehead: Two Great Southerners.

Vicksburg. — Abbott: Battle-fields and Camp-fires.
Coffin: Marching to Victory.
Goss: Tom Clifton.
Hill: On the Trail of Grant and Lee.

General. — Coffin: Drum-beat of the Nation.
Coffin: Freedom Triumphant.
Matthews: Our Navy in Time of War.



"The [illegible] observed by the ladies of Richmond."

CHAPTER VIII

RECONSTRUCTION

On one of the quiet streets in our nation's capital there stands a quaint building, three stories high and oddly shaped. It is even yet known as Ford's Theater, although many years have passed since it was last used as a playhouse. But at the time of the Civil War it was at the height of its popularity. On the very day on which our flag again flung its folds over Fort Sumter, this theater was the scene of a nation's drama.

That evening a brilliant and expectant audience filled the theater. The afternoon papers had announced that President Lincoln and General Grant, with their wives, were to be present. The box at the right of the stage, set apart for the distinguished party, was gayly decorated with national flags. When the occupants of the box arrived it was seen that neither the beloved President nor the honored commander was among them. General Grant, it seems, had been obliged to hasten North on some engagement and President Lincoln was detained by business. The play had not progressed far, however, when the audience arose and cheered wildly, the band

played "Hail to the Chief," and the great President was seen bowing his acknowledgments.

The play had reached the third act, when suddenly the audience was stunned with horror by the sound of a pistol shot. All eyes turned toward their beloved chief stricken by the hand of an assassin. From out the smoke there leaped a man. Striking with his dagger at an army officer who tried to seize him, he vaulted over

Lincoln assassinated

Ford's Theater, in Washington

the railing of the box to the stage below. The spur on one of his riding boots caught in the folds of a flag, and he was thrown to the floor. In spite of a broken leg he rushed from the stage and was soon lost in the night.

The wounded President was tenderly carried to a near-by house, and through the long night, skillful physicians did their best to save the precious life. But slowly it ebbed away, and in the early morning

Abraham Lincoln, the martyred President, sank to his rest.

The 19th of April, 1865, was a day of mourning throughout the land. On that day funeral services were read over the body of Lincoln as it lay in state in the east room of the White House. Following this, the casket, under escort of soldiers and civilians, was taken to the Capitol. Two days later it was placed on a funeral car. The entire train, including the engine, was draped in black. Then began the most impressive of funeral processions. Through eight states it retraced the route that the President had taken from his home in Illinois to his inauguration. In Baltimore, in Philadelphia, in New York, — everywhere along the way, — the people gathered in loving sorrow. Finally the body was laid to rest in Lincoln's home city, Springfield.

The death of Lincoln was a crushing blow to both North and South. Multitudes of the people, even of the South, recognized him as a friend. If the war must be, and if they must go down in defeat, the Southerners felt that their interests would be more wisely taken care of by Lincoln than by any of the other Federal statesmen. And just now the nation needed the very wisest guidance, for it was still bitterly divided. There could be no true reunion until the old wounds should heal. At the best, this would take a long time. As we look back now, we can see that Lincoln's death delayed by many

years the coming of real peace between the two sections.

Bitter, indeed, was the feeling of each section against the other. The South felt that it had been defeated not because it was in the wrong but because it had been overpowered by greater numbers. The North was equally sure that the South had been wrong from the very beginning. It was angry, too, that the South had held out so long in a losing fight, thus increasing the cost in men and money.

Sectional feeling

For another thing, the treatment of prisoners of war had angered both sides, especially the North. Captured Federal soldiers were put into such prisons as the South could afford. These were, of course, not very pleasant places. The prisoners complained bitterly of the conditions. The buildings were filthy, the food was poor, and there was not much of it. In some cases the keepers treated the prisoners with cruelty.

Prison life

The people of the South claimed that they did the best they could. They themselves were living on short rations, and could not be expected to treat their prisoners any better. Their best men were fighting at the front, and many of those left at home to keep the prisons, lacked the bravery and intelligence of the southern soldiers.

The Confederates claimed, too, that they were really not responsible for keeping their captured

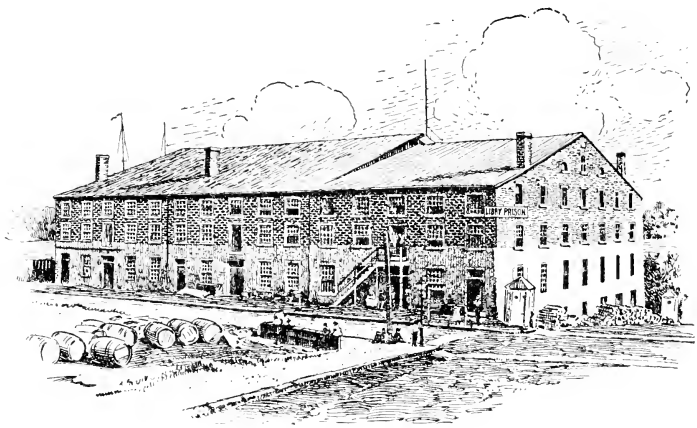
soldiers in prison, for they had been ready to exchange them. But the Federal government, toward the close of the war, had refused to exchange because the Confederates would gain thereby. For each Union prisoner that the northern officers received they would be giving a better-cared-for Confederate. More than this, the North still had so many men that it was not in great need of its imprisoned soldiers. The South, on the other hand, would have been glad to have had its men released that they might be added to its armies in the field.

Some of the prisoners, however, did not wait for their release, but by one means or another managed to escape. Many were the thrilling experiences of the imprisoned soldiers of the North who attempted to elude their guards. Sometimes they were successful, but more often they were not.

One of the most ingenious escapes took place from Libby Prison, in Richmond. Here a score of men spent weeks patiently digging a tunnel to freedom. First they cut away a few bricks from a chimney, carefully concealing the place behind some barrels. Then down the narrow, stuffy chimney they crawled, to an unused storeroom below.

At first they had only a piece of tin can with which to dig. Trying to cut into the earth with this was slow and discouraging business. But luck came their way. One day a mason, working within the prison, left his trowel when he went out at noon. When he

returned, the trowel had mysteriously disappeared, so he gave it up as lost. Soon that trowel was doing hard service scratching away in the tunnel leading out from the old storeroom. Many times the men were



Libby Prison, in Richmond

almost caught. However, after patient weeks the tunnel had been run so far out that it could be opened up into the street outside the prison walls.

It was agreed that, on the night set for the escape, the men who had done the work should have the first chance. But each of them had a friend or two whom he wanted to take with him. Soon hundreds of the prisoners knew of this hope of liberty. So there was a great rush for the tunnel, and a scrambling, pushing fight to get in. Some nearly suffocated, crawling along the close, dark, narrow passage, through the damp earth, over and around rocks and roots. Yet more

than one hundred got away. Imagine the amazement of the guards when they came to count their prisoners the next morning! But it was one thing for the men to get through the tunnel and out into the open, and quite another to reach the lines of the far-away Union army. Some did escape, but many were recaptured and brought back to pass other long weary days and nights "waiting for the war to cease."

The southern people felt that they had a grievance because the North had recruited negro soldiers from among the freed slaves, and had used them in battle against their former masters. Again, the Southerners were very bitter over Sherman's raid from Atlanta to the sea. They accused him of having been much more destructive than need be.

Other grievances

These were but a few of the grievances. When, upon the death of Lincoln, Andrew Johnson, the Vice President, came into power, he faced a very trying situation. The war was over, but the nation was really cut in two. Hundreds of millions of dollars had been put into the war. And worse than this, thousands of men had died on the field of battle. With all these strong men gone and thousands of surviving soldiers suffering from wounds and disease, the country was in a sorry state.

In 1787 the fathers of the nation had established the Union, as they supposed, once for all. But now it was strained and weakened, and before the states-

men of 1865 was the great task of rebuilding it. *Reconstruction* we call the period of the next twenty years, during which this task was being accomplished.

In April, 1865, General Halleck wrote to General Meade: "The Army of the Potomac have shown the people of Virginia how they would be treated as enemies. Let them now prove that they know equally well how to treat the same people as friends." This was the spirit of the conquering soldiers generally, for they had learned to respect the warriors of the South. But there were many others, especially the politicians and stay-at-homes, who shouted for vengeance.

Thus, real reconstruction was delayed by those who were not satisfied with having beaten the South, but wanted to treat it as a conquered land. They would call all Southerners traitors and punish them even though the war was over. Many of the best of the Southerners fled from the country to Mexico, to Brazil, to Egypt, and to Europe, too saddened and crushed to remain among the ruins of their old homes. Others went bravely back to work and stayed to help build up the New South. To-day we are proud that there is no North, no South, in any bitter sense; but that all the states are equally loyal to the Red, White, and Blue of the American Union.

One of the beautiful customs growing out of the war is that of observing Memorial Day. It is on this anniversary that, decorating the soldiers' graves with

flags and flowers, we give special thought to the heroes who have gone to their final reward. The day was first observed in 1866, by the ladies of Richmond, and the custom was eagerly followed by both North and South. **Memorial Day**

The sad conflict had been brought about by two great issues, slavery and secession. The war settled both these for all time.

As to slavery, not only were the slaves freed, but they were given more than even the Abolitionists had asked for them. It was a serious matter to give several million slaves their freedom. The ignorant negroes did not even understand what freedom meant. Most of them had wild dreams of a life without work. The great President who had set them free would, they believed, provide them with food and shelter and clothing, while they spent their days in care-free idleness. They were soon to discover that this was not at all what was **Slavery question settled**

Statue of Lincoln, at Washington

to happen. A few of them had learned to be industrious and thrifty. These soon had work to do, and they kept faithfully at it. Most of the negroes stayed at their old homes, working for wages for their former masters or for other people in the neighborhood. But thousands of the restless wandered idly away seeking adventure. Idleness led to want, and want led to theft. Soon the South was overrun with poor deluded negroes who daily became more insolent and more dangerous.

Even before the close of the war the government at Washington realized that something should be done to help the negro and to protect other people from his misdeeds. So there was formed in the War Department the "Bureau of Refugees, Freedmen, and Abandoned Lands." This Freedmen's Bureau encouraged the negroes to work, and helped them to get work to do. Then it helped them to make their contracts so that they would not be imposed upon, and to settle their labor disputes. It also arranged for the sale and purchase of land so that the negroes might become property owners. Thus, gradually, some of the former slaves became more self-reliant.

The Freedmen's Bureau

It was very important, too, that the negroes should become intelligent and responsible, for they were soon given political rights. Lincoln's proclamation had freed most of them. But, at the close of the war, freedom was made doubly sure. The Con-

stitution was amended so that slavery should never again exist within the United States. This made the Thirteenth Amendment, and soon another was passed giving the negroes citizenship. It was followed by the Fifteenth Amendment, passed five years after the war closed, which gave the slaves the privilege of voting.

The amendments

The war also settled the question of the right to secede. But it was a long time before the seceded states regained their old place in the Union. The Federal government would not recognize the old Confederate state governments, and while it was trying to work out some plan for establishing new state governments, there was much confusion. In the early part of 1867 the South was divided into five military districts, and over each a Federal general was placed in command. Under the protection of the army, loyal state governments were established. In the course of two or three years one after another of the seceded states was readmitted into the Union.

Secession settled

This result was not secured without many difficulties. For one thing the ablest men of the South were not allowed to help in reconstruction. Officeholders had to swear that they had never given "aid or comfort" to a Confederate. Of course, very few people in the South could take such an oath. Those who could were called "scalawags." The result was that the offices went to them and to negroes and

"carpet-baggers." The name carpet-bagger was given by the Southerners to the men from the North who flocked into their states at the close of the war. Most of these men were without much more property than they could bring with them in handbags. They counted on making their fortunes by taking advantage of the situation in the South. These men soon gained the confidence of the negroes, got themselves elected to profitable offices, and ran the governments to suit themselves. The states were soon loaded down with enormous debts, affairs were mismanaged, and law-breaking was common.

The Ku-Klux-Klan

The southern white men defended themselves against the lawlessness as best they could. Almost by accident they found one way to control many of the negroes. In a little village of Tennessee a party of young men found time hanging heavy on their hands, so they formed a secret club called the *Kuklos*, or Circle. One form of entertainment in which they indulged was to disguise themselves and ride about the country at night. Man and horse were sheeted; the man wore a mask and a cardboard hat, and the horse's feet were muffled. Flashing along the moonlit road, their ghostlike figures startled the ignorant and superstitious negroes huddling in their cabins. At first, the whole thing was just a boyish prank. But before long the white men of the South recognized that here was a way to keep the negroes in order and to punish people whom they

suspected of wrongdoing. The organization spread from state to state, and became known as the Invisible Empire of the South, or the Ku-Klux-Klan. Their purpose, they declared, was "to protect the weak, innocent, and defenseless from the indignities, wrongs, and outrages of the lawless, the violent, and the brutal."

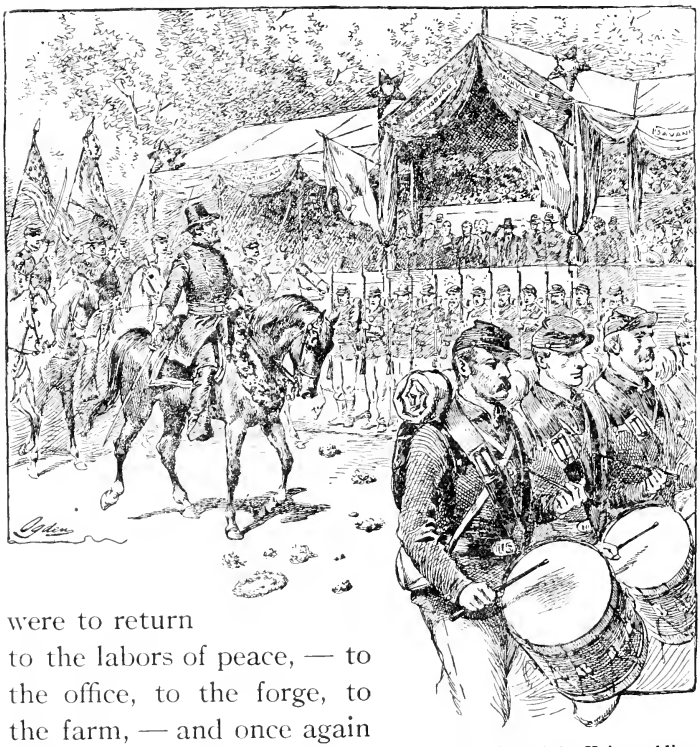
In time, however, conditions greatly improved. The Union troops were withdrawn, the capable men of the South gained control, and order was restored.

Fortunately, the sad picture of the South at the close of the war was not repeated in the North. Except for Gettysburg and the battles in the border states, no important fighting had been done on Union soil. The people of the North had not suffered the spoiling and plundering of their homes by invading armies. Yet they had heavy sorrows. They had been borne down with grief over the brave who had fallen at the front — and these numbered awful thousands. There were thousands more in the field, sick and wounded, who might never see their homes again.

There were other thousands of able-bodied men who were now to lay down their arms. What a vast number they were! In May, 1865, the combined Union armies of the East and West marched through the avenues of Washington with glittering guns and battle-scarred flags. The columns extended thirty miles. It took nearly two whole days for them to pass in review.

Disbanding the army

These were the men who had been for months or even years busy in the work of destruction. Now they were to return to the labors of peace, — to the office, to the forge, to the farm, — and once again take up the work that they had put aside for war. This they did with as good courage as they had shown on the field, and the "old soldier" was soon quietly attending to his new duties.



The review of the Union soldiers in Washington

There was yet another burden. The government

had gone deeply into debt to carry on the war. This meant heavy taxes. Long years passed before the burden was lifted — in fact, we are still paying out money on account of the war of a half-century ago. But there was little complaint over the size of the debt. The Union had been preserved, and the people were as ready to pay the price in money as they had been to pay it in men.

The debt

An annoying thing connected with the money problem was that gold and silver became scarce. Various substitutes were used for silver coins. Postage stamps came into use as "small change." They were better than nothing, but they were flimsy and sticky. The government came to the rescue by printing small-sized paper money for fractions of a dollar. Even these were inconvenient to handle, and every one was glad enough when, some ten years later, coins again took their place.

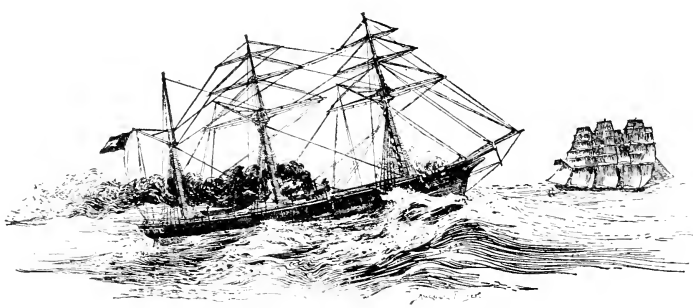
The war brought upon us two difficulties with foreign nations. Our neighbors in Mexico had been having a civil war of their own, beginning in 1857. Four years later England, France, and Spain interfered in order to protect their citizens who were in danger there. The three nations agreed that they would not take sides as to who should be the ruler of Mexico. France, however, broke this agreement. Napoleon III thought that the United States was now too busy with its own troubles to enforce the Monroe Doctrine. So he sent

The Monroe Doctrine in Mexico

an army into Mexico and put his friend, Maximilian of Austria, on the throne. The United States protested, but could do nothing more until after the close of our war. Then troops were massed on the frontier, and the French soldiers prudently withdrew.

The second matter turned out to be a triumph for arbitration. That is, instead of settling it by war, the two nations agreed to submit their disputes to outsiders. The disagreement was with England over help she had given the Confederates. England had declared that she would remain neutral; that is, she would not take sides in the war. Despite this, she had allowed warships built in her yards to be sold to the Confederacy. The chief of them was the cruiser *Alabama*. The United States claimed that England ought to pay

Alabama claims



The *Alabama* pursuing a northern ship

for the damage these ships had done. Five commissioners were appointed, each by the ruler of a different nation, to consider the case. They met in Geneva,

Switzerland, and decided the dispute against England, who was required to pay the United States several million dollars. We have reason to be proud of this achievement, not because we won our point, but because it was a victory for the peaceful settlement of differences.

FOR CAREFUL STUDY

The rejoicing of the people over the ending of the war was turned to sorrow by the assassination of Lincoln, in April, 1865. His assassin was shot while resisting capture. Lincoln was succeeded by Andrew Johnson. He and the statesmen about him had before them a very perplexing problem, that of reconstructing the Union.

The war had settled the slavery question forever. The settlement was written into the Constitution by the Thirteenth Amendment. This was followed by two amendments giving the former slaves citizenship and the right to vote. The Federal government formed the Freedmen's Bureau to help the negroes take care of themselves in their new-found freedom.

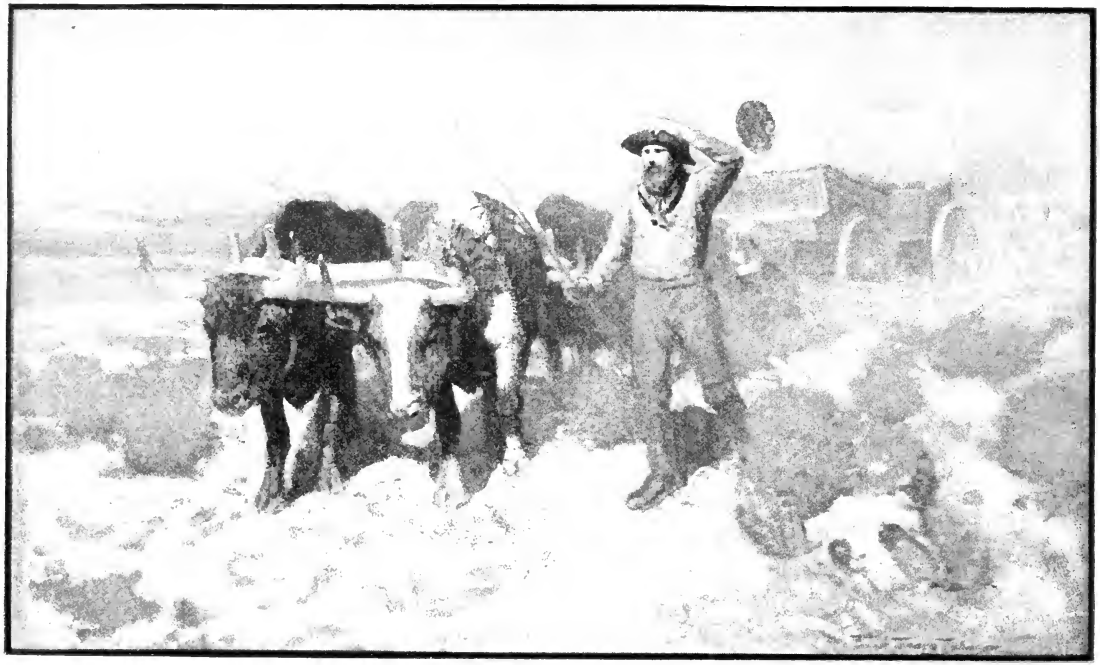
The Southern states were for a time managed by military governors appointed by the Federal government. In a few years all were given back their statehood and readmitted to the Union.

While this was going on, other problems at home and abroad were being settled satisfactorily. The armies were disbanded, and the men returned without confusion to their work at home. The debt, though heavy, has been cheerfully borne and constantly reduced in amount.

As to foreign affairs, we had to restate the Monroe Doctrine to France, who had been interfering in Mexico. When we showed that we were in earnest, France withdrew from that country. We also had claims against England for certain aid which she had given the Confederacy. A commission of arbitration went over the matter and decided it in our favor.

FACT TO BE MEMORIZED

The Civil War resulted in the abolition of slavery and the reunion of the states.



"Whole families packed their household goods into a wagon and set off"

CHAPTER IX

THE GREAT WEST

THE Civil War was over, but the American people could not forget that they owed a heavy debt to their valiant defenders. Many who had risked their all in that terrible struggle were rewarded with public office. The highest honor in the gift of the people came to several of the leaders who had fought and suffered in the war. Grant, Hayes, Garfield, Harrison, and McKinley — all Republicans — were elected to the presidency. And these men came neither from the old North nor from the old South, but from the newer West. All were born in Ohio, one of the states carved out of the great Northwest Territory that was organized at the close of the Revolution. How that region was settled and how it furnished Presidents is all part of a wonderful story of progress.

Republican Presidents

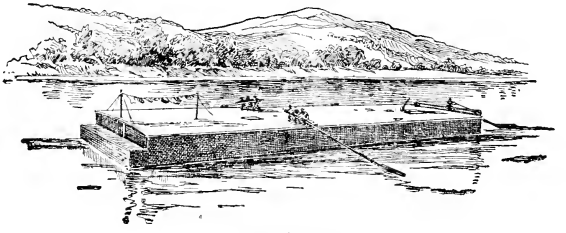
We recall that Columbus and the other early explorers were seeking a western passage. They found, instead, a new western continent. Thither people flocked by thousands. Presently our country was settled along its eastern coast and as far west as the Allegheny

The westward movement

Mountains. The next movement was across these mountains to the Mississippi. Then the vast Louisiana Territory gave us a new western boundary, and the pioneer pushed his way into the fertile plains beyond the river. Farther on was a region of desolation known as the Great American Desert, and beyond it rose the lofty Rockies. For a while these obstacles seemed to say to the pioneer, "Stop! You can go no further!" But he conquered the desert and the mountains, and succeeded in reaching the Pacific.

It was nearly four centuries before the western coast of our continent was thus settled. There are many reasons why it took so long. We who journey by swiftly moving electric car, fast speeding train, or palatial steamer, find it difficult to imagine travel without these means. But the pioneer who left the English colonies in the early eighteenth century and made his way across the Allegheny Mountains usually went afoot. He carried his possessions on his back, and relied on his rifle and ax for food and protection. Sometimes he had the aid of a pack horse or a saddle horse. Sometimes he went by water, for "the early emigrant learned that a raft would eat nothing, that a boat ran well down stream." So, many of our forefathers put their goods on rafts or on flatboats and floated down the streams that flowed south and southwest. Traveling by these means, they reached and settled what they called the "West."

With the invention of the steamboat the pioneer no longer needed to depend on the raft or flatboat.



A flatboat

More than this, he was now able to go not only with the current, but up stream as well. Thus was opened for settlement an ever increasing area. But to cross the dry plains and the Rocky Mountains, the faithful horse again had to be called into service.

The early western life of our country bred many heroes. Indeed every man and every woman, every boy and every girl, who took part in the work of the pioneers was of necessity brave and dauntless.

The way across the Alleghenies into Kentucky was led by Daniel Boone in 1769. From his home in North Carolina, with a few companions, he crossed the mountains and blazed a trail through the dark forests to the fair land beyond. The country was the hunting ground of many red men. For this reason the route was beset with danger. There was no knowing where the dark-skinned forms might be hiding. Many a night the pioneers slept in hollow trees. Many a cheery camp-

Daniel Boone

fire they were forced to abandon, driven away by prowling savages.

Boone returned East, but he made the trip again several times. On each expedition he took a larger number of people with him. The path that he made was given several names: "Boone's Trail," the "Kentucky Road," the "Wilderness Road." As the way into the new country became more and more safe, signs such as the following were frequently posted:

Notice

"A large company will meet at Crab Orchard the 19th of November in order to start the next day through the Wilderness. As it is very dangerous on account of the Indians, it is hoped each person will go well armed."

Pioneer life

The progress of the people across the great American continent has been compared to a "series of rolling waves, one passing ever on beyond the other." Let us look into the childhood home of Abraham Lincoln. There we see a family that, like many others, was being borne along on this tide. In the fall of 1816 Abraham's father packed his few household goods on two borrowed horses, stowed the children among the bundles, and with his wife by his side, started on foot from Kentucky for a new home in Indiana.

Arriving at the Ohio, the horses were unloaded and sent back. On the other side of the river the load was piled into a hired wagon and pulled to the new home.

Home! What an odd name to give that cold bleak waste — for carpets, fallen leaves; and for walls, tall, straight trees whose bare intertwining branches formed the only roof.

A rude structure of logs was hastily put together. The father cut down the trees, the mother helped to trim them, and little Abraham and his sister added their strength when it came to putting the logs in place. Heaps of dry leaves served as beds, and as there was no chimney, the fire had to be built outside the cabin. It was a hard struggle that first winter just to keep alive. Each had his share of the labor. The little ones gathered brushwood for the fire and walked a mile to get water, trudging the long way back with their heavy burdens. Not one of the family possessed a pair of shoes. Clumsy homemade mocassins were not much protection from the biting sleet and snow of winter.

The following year a better shelter was put up. This one was about eighteen feet square, with a real chimney, so that a fire might be built indoors. A deerskin served as a door, but there were no windows. A rough table and some odd three-legged chairs were constructed. We may wonder how they managed to sleep in the crude beds. The boy's bed was in an upper part of the cabin which formed a sort of loft. Each night he climbed to his sleeping place by a stairway of pegs driven into the side of the wall. No roads led to the house, only a blazed trail through the woods.

The new home was a great improvement on the old, yet how wretched it seems to us.

The early pioneers bought little of their food and clothing, for it was usually many miles to the nearest store. They shot turkeys and deer for meat, and fashioned their garments out of deerskin. They made their bread of corn meal, and gathered wild berries for a dessert. Only strong bodies and brave spirits lived through the hardships of this life. It is to these dauntless pioneers and their sons and daughters that our country owes its forward march to better things.

In 1826 the tide of migration had crossed the Mississippi and moved up the Missouri as far as the Kansas River. Here it was stopped by what was then known as the Great American Desert. At that time, west of the Mississippi, there were just two states, Missouri and Louisiana, and one territory, Arkansas.

A pioneer

Kit Carson

It remained for Kit Carson, the last and perhaps the greatest of western pioneers, to blaze the trail on to the Pacific. Christopher Carson was born in the same year and in the same state as Abraham Lincoln. He, however, had little use for books, so his father set him to learn a trade. But

the boy had listened to the thrilling tales of the hunters and trappers who came in from the mysterious land of the setting sun. He could not sit quietly on a high stool and learn to make saddles. So he ran away. The Missouri *Intelligencer*, a weekly newspaper, published this notice on October 12, 1826:

> "Notice is hereby given to all persons that Christopher Carson, a boy about sixteen years old, small for his age, but thick-set, with light hair, ran away from the subscriber, living in Franklin, Howard County, Missouri, to whom he had been bound to learn the saddler's trade, on or about the 1st of September last. He is supposed to have made his way to the upper part of the state. All persons are notified not to harbor, support, or assist said boy, under penalty of the law. One cent reward will be given to any person who will bring back the said boy."

Sometimes as hunter, sometimes as teamster, Kit Carson made his way from the Missouri River to the Sacramento, from the Gulf of California far north to the Columbia. In 1842 he met Lieutenant Frémont and his party on the Mississippi. Frémont had been sent by the United States government to cross the Rockies and explore the region beyond. Carson joined the party and became their official guide. On this and later Frémont expeditions Carson rendered great service. That he did his work well is shown by the fact that when the great

Frémont

railroads connecting the East and West were laid, they often followed the old Frémont trails.

Carson was a trail maker, but he was also a peacemaker. The farther west the white man pushed, the closer he crowded his red brother. And the red man fought. He now possessed gun and pony, and used them with his own peculiar cunning. He could slip from the saddle, cling to its side, and thus, with his own body well protected, fire many a death-dealing shot. Carson knew the red man well. Not only could he bring peace between Indian and white, but he was so well acquainted with Indian nature, that the braves often called upon him to settle disputes among themselves. It has been said that Carson was better than a regiment of cavalry. Withal, he was modest and unassuming, and shrank from praise. An army officer who once met him, exclaimed, "So this is the distinguished Kit Carson, who made so many Indians run." Carson replied, "Yes, I made some Indians run, but much of the time they were running *after* me."

Gold in California

In January, 1848, a discovery was made in California which drew many people westward. In the valley of a branch of the Sacramento a bit of yellow metal glistened in the bed of a mill stream. It called to the people of the East, and by tens of thousands they answered the call.

A man named Marshall first spied the precious

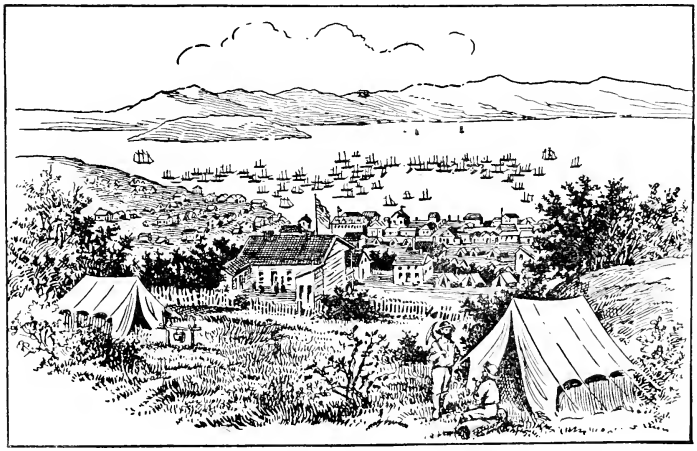
metal. "I reached my hand down and pulled it up," he says, "it made my heart thump, for I was certain it was gold." The largest particles were about the size of a grain of wheat. Marshall gathered a spoonful and tested it. He hammered it and found that it yielded to pressure. Then he tried it in fire, and found that it did not soon melt or change color. He put it through several other tests, and at last was convinced that it was gold. More and more of the bright metal was found in the neighborhood. Every one dropped other work to hunt for it. The news of the discovery leaped from settlement to settlement, from state to state. The people went gold crazy.

All over the country eager thousands vied with each other to reach the land of promise. For the Easterner there were two routes, — overland, and by water around Cape Horn. Those who could afford it went by water. All sorts of crazy craft were called into service, but so eager were the venturesome to be first on the field, that sailing masters got whatever prices they asked.

Travel across the continent was much cheaper, so the poorer people went in this way. Sometimes whole families packed their household goods into a wagon and set off, taking their animals with them. Often just the men went, but always they traveled in great numbers. Many were so eager to be off that they were not properly prepared for so trying a journey. There were rough trails where the wagons overturned,

on the plains great droves of buffalo muddied the waters of the springs, and there were weary stretches of barren land where the thirsty travelers would have given up all the gold in the world for one drink of water. It is said that in 1849 the overland route was marked by broken-down wagons, dead animals, and the graves of those who had fallen by the way.

Yet very many reached the gold fields. There a new and curious life awaited them. San Francisco



San Francisco, shortly after the discovery of gold in California

was a city of tents. Men slept on the floors, on tables, — anywhere. The harbor was filled with vessels, whose crews had joined the ranks of the gold seekers. There were no sailors to take the ships back to the home ports; one of the ships became the first jail of the town; others rotted away and fell to pieces.

Men from many walks of life met and worked together. And there seemed to be gold for all. In forty years California yielded more than a billion dollars worth of gold! It was not uncommon in the early days for one man to take out $1000 in one day, — and sometimes the amount reached $5000. Prices soared skyward. For example, flour brought fifty dollars a barrel, a spade ten, a shirt forty, a candle three. So simple a meal as a cup of coffee, a slice of ham and two eggs cost three dollars, and yet the cafés were crowded from morning until night.

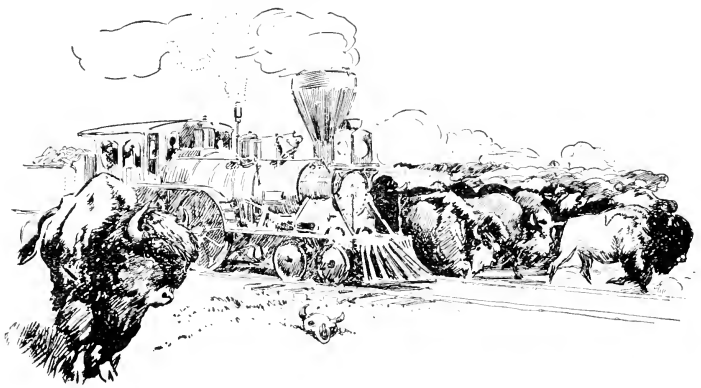
Most of the fortune hunters were young, vigorous, and law-abiding men. In September, 1849, they met to form a constitution, and, as we have learned, by the Compromise of 1850 California was admitted as a state.

One of the arguments against admitting California was its great distance from Washington. How, people questioned, will its Congressmen ever get to the capital? They must spend all their time traveling, and the journey is too dangerous. But in 1862 Congress granted several companies land for building railroads across the continent.

The first of these great transcontinental railroads was built by two companies, one working westward from Omaha, and the other eastward from Sacramento. The workmen lived in trains, running them forward as mile after mile of the road was completed. Progress was slow.

First transcontinental railroad

Sandy plains and rugged mountainsides had to be overcome. The workmen were well armed. Even so, it was occasionally necessary to detail troops to guard them. For the Indians "hovered about like vultures." The Sioux and others lay in wait to destroy the work as fast as it was completed. But despite all the difficulties the two lines finally met at Ogden,



A train passing through a herd of buffaloes

Utah. Here, with much ceremony, the last tie was laid. It was a piece of California laurel beautifully polished and bearing a silver plate on which were engraved the names of the officers of the road. The rails were fastened to it with two spikes of gold and two of silver. These were driven into place by Governor Stanford of California and the general manager of the railroad. As Governor Stanford, with his silver hammer, dealt the blows, they were recorded by telegraph all over the country. At the last stroke the

word "done" was flashed along the wires. Not many years later other roads were built across the continent to the north and to the south of this.

One man who rendered a large service to the Great West was Captain James B. Eads, an engineer. Across the Mississippi, at St. Louis, he built a steel bridge that was the marvel of its day. A few years later he gained new fame by his work at the mouth of this important river. By building out false banks, called jetties, he forced the river to move more swiftly. This carried farther out to sea the huge deposits of mud that had for many years prevented the passage of large steamers. The money for this immense undertaking was supplied by Congress, and it was four years before the work was completed. Finally, in 1879, it became possible for the largest steamers of the day to make their way to New Orleans, and the commerce of the great river made rapid gains.

Captain Eads

The railroads and steamships had brought the West many days nearer to the crowded East. The old dangers of travel across the continent were no more. A great many people were attracted to the new West. Nebraska particularly rejoiced over having a railroad that connected her with the outside world. Now she had a larger market for the products of her fertile soil. New settlers came in great numbers, and in 1867 she was admitted as a state. Other western states grew rapidly. This was largely due to wise

laws passed by Congress, one of which was the Homestead Act of 1862. By it the head of any family might claim a plot of land, from eighty to one hundred sixty acres. If he lived on it and cultivated it for five years it became his property. Thus, in a remarkably short period, millions of acres west of the Mississippi were taken over and made to yield luxuriantly.

Homestead Act

The government contributed in another way to western development. In 1862 it created a new division in its Department of the Interior, called the Bureau of Agriculture. Later this bureau was made an independent department. It introduces into the country new and desirable seeds and plants. It issues bulletins that contain valuable information for the farmer. These reach the men who may be too poor to buy books, and too far away from libraries to borrow them. It is this department, too, that sends out weather reports and gives warning of coming storms.

Department of Agriculture

The discovery of gold in California suggested that the precious metal might also be hidden in the Rocky Mountains. It was not long before this was proved to be so. In 1859 gold was found in the country about Pikes Peak. Here was a region easier to reach than California, and a sudden rush to the new gold fields followed. It is said that one hundred thousand people came in one year. White-covered wagons were used in crossing the plains. On many of them

was printed in huge black letters "Pike's Peak or Bust."

Towns sprang up as if a magician had waved his wand over the land. Among them were Boulder, Pueblo, and Denver. Denver was connected by railroad with the Union Pacific. In 1876 Colorado was admitted as a state. In the great Northwest the growth was even more marvelous. During the next twenty years seven commonwealths were taken into the growing sisterhood of states. These were North Dakota, South Dakota, Montana, and Washington, in 1889; Idaho and Wyoming, in 1890; and Utah, in 1896.

Colorado and other states

As the early fortune hunter pushed his way westward, he came constantly in contact with the Indians. In many cases the red men proved friendly. But if one brave were insulted it meant revenge on the first whites to appear, whether they were guilty or innocent. The national government allotted to the Indians certain areas known as reservations. The Indians were expected to keep within their limits, but they did not always do so. Having once roamed wherever they would, it is not strange that they sometimes grew weary of their restricted quarters and sallied forth on raiding expeditions. This, of course, angered the frontier settler. Yet he, in turn, did not always respect the Indian's territory. If the reservation attracted him he often slipped across its borders.

Troubles with the Indians

The red man and the white man were in constant friction. One of the most terrible encounters took place in 1876. The Sioux, led by Sitting Bull, had been extremely troublesome on their Montana reservation. General Sheridan was sent to quell the uprising. The Indians were located at Little Big Horn River, and General Custer, a bold cavalryman, was ordered forward to hold them in check until the entire forces should arrive. With the reckless daring that made him a most picturesque figure, General Custer made a headlong attack. But he and his five companies rode into a death trap. The red men, who were almost three thousand in number, surged upon them with savage ferocity. The troopers fought with desperate bravery but against overwhelming odds. Of all that gallant band numbering two hundred sixty, not one escaped. Only Custer's horse and a half-breed rider survived. The horse was found several miles from the battlefield, his body bearing seven bullet wounds. The faithful

Custer

Sitting Bull

charger was never again ridden and a soldier was detailed to care for him for the rest of his life.

This encounter was followed by many in which the Indians were beaten and forced to return to their reservations. Several hundreds, under Sitting Bull, went to Canada, where they remained for four years. Ten years later Sitting Bull, claiming that his people had not been treated fairly by the government, again led them in an uprising. General Miles waged war upon them. Sitting Bull met his end, and within a year four thousand Indians surrendered. Since that time the Indians have given no serious trouble. In fact, large numbers of them are to-day taking part in the white man's civilization. They are like him in dress, in manners, in home life, in occupations. Like him they aspire to do their share of the world's work.

The great West means to us usually the lands between the Mississippi and the Pacific. Yet the possessions of the United States reach northwest even beyond the Arctic Circle. In 1867 the United States purchased Alaska from Russia for $7,200,000. Most people thought we had made a bad bargain, but we soon learned that the country is rich in furs, fisheries, and mines. In the summer of 1897 there came a wonderful story of Alaska's golden treasure. During the previous fall some forty experienced miners had gone into the region of the Yukon River. They had taken their working outfit and a little money. They came

Gold in Alaska

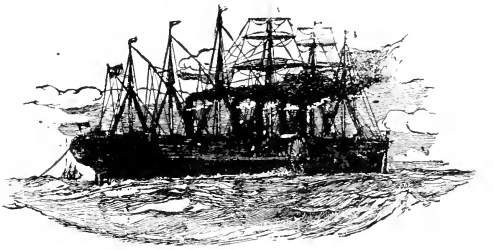
out with a half-million dollars worth of gold and they had staked claims that were to yield them even greater wealth. The most productive region was in Canada, along the Klondike River, a tributary of the Yukon.

Vast numbers of people were attracted to the new gold fields. They led quite a different life from the "forty-niners" of California or the "fifty-niners" of Colorado. There is neither springtime nor autumn in northern Alaska, and the summer season is but four months long. By the first of October it is winter, after which outdoor work is impossible. And winter in Alaska means snow, ice, and often great suffering. Yet even women braved the dangers. Through perseverance and against hardships, many fortunes were found in the once despised territory.

During this period of Western extension events were not, of course, at a standstill in other and older parts of the country. A year before the acquisition of Alaska, an American invention had secured a new command of the ocean. Telegraphic wires under water had been for some time in successful use between Manhattan Island and Governor's Island in New York Bay. To stretch a submarine cable from America to Europe would be a far more difficult feat. Nevertheless, there was one American, Cyrus Field, who felt sure it could be done. Fortunately, many business men agreed with him and a company was formed. The governments of Great Britain and the United States gave liberal

Atlantic cable

aid, furnishing the vessels for laying the big cables. In 1857 two ships left Ireland, each carrying twelve hundred fifty miles of cable. All went well for three days. Then suddenly the cable parted.



Laying the Atlantic cable

This failure seemed like a national calamity. The vessels returned with flags at half mast. Though a half-million dollars had been spent, more money was secured and another trial was made the next year. This time the vessels sailed to mid-ocean, and there the two parts of the cable were spliced. Then one sailed east and the other west, each laying its cable as it went. At Ireland and at Newfoundland the ends of the cable were connected with the instruments. Under the water the message went singing, "Europe and America are united by telegraph. Glory to God in the highest, on earth peace, good will toward men."

But there was yet further disappointment in store. Eighteen days later the cable refused to work. Once more discouragement and ruin confronted Field, but he was not daunted. In July, 1866, another cable was laid. This time it proved permanently successful.

Now many hundreds of cables lie hidden in the ocean deeps. Business messages and messages of good will fly back and forth, and we are kept informed as to what our foreign cousins are doing from day to day.

While in these and countless other ways men were conquering nature, here and there her forces were showing their power to destroy. In 1871 a large part of the city of Chicago was swept by a dreadful fire that raged forty-eight hours. It broke out at night, caused, it is supposed, by a cow kicking over an oil lamp. Day and night it burned, eating its way unmercifully from one part of the city to another, destroying as many as seventeen thousand buildings. Many people were killed by falling timbers. Others lost their lives in the mad rush to get away from burning and toppling houses. Almost one hundred thousand were made homeless. Fully two hundred lives were lost. Yet within two years a new and finer Chicago had risen over the blackened ground of the tragedy.

Chicago fire

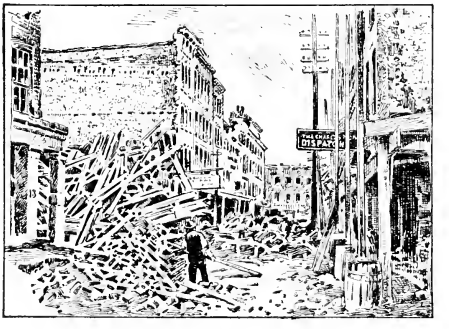
In the following year fire swept through Boston, causing a loss of millions of dollars. This fire, too, began in the evening, starting just how no one knows. Until four in the afternoon of the next day it blazed almost unchecked. The fire department was crippled because of an epidemic that had seized the horses of the city. All through the night business men carried such goods as they could to places of safety. Fire departments from neighbor-

Boston fire

ing towns hastened to give their services. They needed no message to call them. The sky for sixty miles inland told the dreadful story. Chicago, remembering how Boston had helped her, sent this message, "We will share with you whatever we have left." But Boston had already begun to stand up under her adversity. Merchants were busy selling their goods in hotel parlors and dining rooms. Temporary buildings were hastily erected, and soon Boston was herself again.

Fire is not the only force that nature uses in laying low the work of man. At times the very earth itself rocks and shivers. Even the early records of the colonies speak of earthquakes. One of the severest took place in 1755, when the coast was shaken for a thousand miles and

Charleston earthquake



A street in Charleston after the earthquake

in Boston hundreds of houses were damaged. In 1886 Charleston was devastated by an earthquake which

destroyed three fourths of the city and cost the lives of scores of people.

Johnstown flood

In 1889 the city of Johnstown, Pennsylvania, was wrecked by flood. An unusually heavy rain caused the dam, eighteen miles above the city, to break. Within seven minutes the raging waters reached the city. Mounting higher and higher, they swept houses and people away. A survivor tells of the horror of seeing stately buildings fall, and of seeing neighbors borne along on the wave, sometimes to be crushed to death against a broken wall, sometimes to be engulfed in the rushing waters. Several thousand people perished, and the survivors were threatened with starvation. In a surprisingly short time help in generous measure came flowing in. The same courage that led the Pilgrims and Puritans to the bleak shores of New England fired the hearts of these ruined people. They turned from the past to build a new and better future.

Before going on to the next period in our history we must glance over the political situation of these days.

Political questions

As the Civil War receded further and further into the past, new issues came into the politics of the nation. Questions about war and reconstruction gave way to questions of policy in time of peace.

One of the subjects on which opinions differed, and differ still, is the tariff. Some would have a high tariff, believing that it makes wages higher and

leads to prosperity. Others would have no tariff at all, but free trade, allowing every one to buy from any country without paying duty. Still others would collect only such duties as would yield taxes enough to support the government; that is, a tariff for revenue only.

Tariff

Another issue is civil service reform. The old practice started by Jackson of giving the victorious party all the offices was seen to have bad effects. There are thousands of positions under the government, such as those of clerks and letter carriers, that demand training. When men have gained this training, it is not fair to them or good for the service to put them out of office because they happened to vote the losing ticket in an election.

Civil service

With these and many other new issues coming to the front, the people came to depend less upon the heroes of the war to lead them in politics. General Grant served two terms, and was followed by two other generals, Hayes and Garfield.

Garfield served but a short while. For a second time the pages of our history were stained by an assassin. Within four months after his inauguration Garfield was shot by a disappointed office-seeker. The wounded President lingered on through the summer, but it was impossible to save his life.

Garfield was succeeded by Vice President Arthur, who was not a warrior, but a lawyer. He was a hearty believer in civil service reform. During his presi-

dency the Civil Service Act was passed. It closed certain government positions to all but those who passed an examination, and forbade the removal of employees on account of their politics.

The next President was another lawyer, Grover Cleveland, the first Democrat to be elected in over a quarter of a century. Cleveland has the distinction of being the only President to serve two separate terms. He was three times a candidate, but the second time was defeated by Benjamin Harrison. Cleveland's defeat was due largely to the fact that he boldly stated his views on the tariff. He believed that the tariff should be lowered. In course of time more people agreed with him, and he was returned to his high office.

Not all the political questions of these years were concerning home affairs. Several important events affected our foreign relations. We shall speak of two. In 1893 a matter that had been for a long time under dispute between the United States and England, was finally settled. It involved our rights over seal hunters in the waters about Alaska. It was decided partly against us and partly in our favor. The other matter concerned us because it threatened a violation of our Monroe Doctrine. For years the boundary line between Venezuela and British Guiana had been under dispute. Upon the appeal of President Cleveland England agreed to submit the subject to arbitration.

Foreign affairs

Both these instances helped to show the nations of the world how much better it is to arbitrate disputes than to settle them by wasteful warfare. And yet the very next chapter in our history finds us engaged in deadly conflict with a foreign nation.

FOR CAREFUL STUDY

The period following the Civil War was chiefly remarkable for the amazing development of the country west of the Mississippi. Although settlement had been going on for years, there had been certain marked movements of people westward.

The first of these followed the close of the War of 1812. The second was the result of the discovery of gold in California in 1848 and in the Rocky Mountains in 1859.

Now a third movement came at the close of the Civil War, when the old soldiers, and others, were encouraged to go west by the Homestead Act, which gave land to home-builders. The pioneering stage was about over. The early trails had developed into substantial roadways. The Atlantic and the Pacific coasts were now connected by a through line of railroad.

Throughout all the years of settlement, the ground was disputed by the Indians, but there were few of them compared with the host of white men who claimed the land. The Indians broke forth in occasional uprisings, but were each time defeated and compelled to live within the reservations allotted to them.

Thus were developed great states throughout the West, and one after another they were admitted into the Union. The United States extended its territory even beyond these states by purchasing from Russia for the sum of $7,200,000, the extensive region of Alaska in the far north.

States west of the Mississippi

The struggle with nature took many forms besides the conflicts in pioneering. Lofty bridges were built

across turbulent rivers. Levees were built at the mouth of the Mississippi so that large ships could carry the growing commerce. Time was nearly annihilated when Cyrus Field gained for America the honor of laying the first ocean cable across the Atlantic.

On the other hand, disaster came in various forms. Chicago and Boston suffered heavy losses from fire. Charleston was wrecked by an earthquake. Johnstown was torn to pieces by a flood.

In politics, during the period following the Civil War, the tariff, civil service reform, and other issues replaced those growing out of the war. The Presidents from 1869 to 1901 were, in succession: Grant, Hayes, Garfield, Arthur, Cleveland, Harrison, Cleveland, McKinley. Cleveland was a Democrat; all the others were Republicans.

Cleveland, in vigorous language, stated the Monroe Doctrine to England in the matter of her relations with Venezuela. This and other differences were settled by arbitration.

FACTS TO BE MEMORIZED

Gold was discovered in California in 1848.
Alaska was purchased from Russia in 1867.

Bibliography

Boone. — Bouvé: American Heroes and Heroines.
Holland: Historic Boyhoods.
Morris: Historical Tales.
Roosevelt and Lodge: Hero Tales.
Tappan: American Hero Stories.

Carson. — Bouvé: American Heroes and Heroines.
Tappan: American Hero Stories.

Custer. — Custer: The Boy General.
Charleston. — Southern Stories Retold from St. Nicholas.
Field. — Lane: Triumphs of Science.
Mowry: American Inventions and Inventors.
Gold. — Wright: Children's Stories of American Progress.
General. — Bass: Stories of Pioneer Life.
Drake: Making of the Great West.
Garland: Boy Life on the Prairie.
Kingsley: Westward Ho!

"Up in the turret were the men who did the work"

CHAPTER X

SPANISH WAR

"BATTLESHIP *Maine* blown up in Havana harbor! 260 lives lost!" These were the flaming headlines borne by the morning papers of February 16, 1898. A tremor of horror swept over the country as the people realized the sudden and awful death into which their loyal sailors had been hurled. In addition, there was the suspicion that Spain was in some way responsible for the disaster.

Destruction of the *Maine*

Even before this happened, the Americans had been indignant toward Spain. The people of Cuba were in revolt against the Spanish government, and their misfortunes aroused keen sympathy. For the previous fifteen years the island of Cuba had suffered greatly from Spanish misrule. From time to time the Cubans had rebelled, only to be subdued again with increased cruelty. In 1895, driven to desperation, they set up a government of their own and declared their independence.

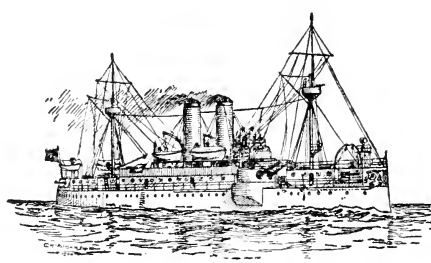
Cuban revolt

Spain made General Weyler military governor of Cuba. Under him the Cubans suffered far more than the ordinary hardships of warfare. Peaceful work-

men were slain on their way to labor. Many a man, returning at nightfall, found his wife and children gone and his home in ashes. Most horrible of all, crowds of peasants were driven from their homes and herded in towns, where many died of fever or starvation. The American newspapers were filled with stories of Cuban sufferings, and the magazines printed pictures of starving children. Such conditions at our very doorstep pulled mightily on our heartstrings.

The United States takes action

The battleship *Maine* had been sent to Havana harbor as a refuge for any of our citizens who might be endangered by the Cuban revolution. Examination showed that its destruction had been caused by the explosion of a mine under water. That this could happen was one



The *Maine*

more proof that Spain was unable to maintain order in Cuba.

Congress took prompt action. On April 20, 1898, Spain was ordered to give up Cuba and to remove all her forces from the island. President McKinley sent

a special message to Congress, saying: "In the name of humanity, in the name of civilization, in behalf of endangered American interests, which give us the right and the duty to speak and act, the war in Cuba must stop." America then began war in defense of her suffering neighbor. This youthful nation gave of its robust strength to protect the weak and oppressed.

Spain was in a trying position. Though France, Germany, and Austria were not especially friendly to us and, it was feared, might support Spain, Great Britain immediately placed herself on our side. This showed the three countries that it would be wise to let Spain and the United States settle their difficulty alone. To add to Spain's troubles, the Philippine Islands, her most treasured possession in the East, were also in revolt.

It was there that the first important engagement of the Spanish-American War took place. When war was yet but a rumor, Commodore Dewey was at Hongkong. Here he was advised by secret message to make ready for action. That meant to take on as much coal as possible and to drill his men rigidly. Later, he must get out the paint pots, and change to a dull slate color his white ships, beautiful in time of peace, but too good a target in time of war.

On April 24 he received the following cablegram from the Secretary of the Navy: "War has commenced between Spain and the United States. Pro-

ceed at once to Philippine Islands. Commence operations at once, particularly against Spanish fleet. You must capture vessels or destroy. Use utmost endeavors." With the promptness of long training Dewey made for Manila harbor.

War begun

The entrance to the harbor is divided by an island into two channels, and is guarded by strong forts. By midnight of April 30 the American squadron, but dimly lighted, was stealing single file into the south channel of the bay. It seemed to the sailors that the Spaniards must surely hear them. To their anxious ears every sound was magnified as the moments crept by. Their hearts beat wildly with excitement. Farther and farther in they crept, in the terrifying darkness, knowing not at what minute the enemy might open fire on them from fort or fleet. Worse, at any moment they might strike a submarine mine and be hurled into eternity. An officer whispered that surely the entire garrison must be asleep. Strange indeed, that their progress was unhindered.

Swiftly, as is the way in the tropics, the dawn broke, and radiant daylight shone about them, revealing, close by, the city of Manila and its wharves. At five o'clock the shore batteries and the Spanish squadron stationed along the coast opened a heavy fire. The only reply at first was the sudden display of the flag, "Remember the *Maine*." Dewey waited until the ships were within close range. Then he turned to Captain

Battle of Manila Bay

Gridley, who was waiting anxious, expectant, for the order that came so quietly, "You may fire when you are ready."

Instantly, from the *Olympia*, which was in the lead, there belched forth a mighty volume of destruction. Directly abreast of the rapidly-firing enemy Dewey led his ships, then back again. Once more across their lines, and back again, the American squadron went, firing as rapidly as men and guns could work. The enemy returned the fire with great vigor. Though our vessels were better than theirs, the Spaniards possessed the advantage of their shore batteries. Yet the strength of their position was not proof against the American war horse of steel and his breath of fire.

Up in the turret were the men who did the work, six of them to each gun. Crowded into a small space, beneath a blistering tropical sun, stripped to the waist, they responded, each to his own particular call — "Sponge," "Load," "Point," "Fire." Then would leap forth a flame of destruction, and the gunners, blinded by smoke, gasping for air, would make ready for the next blast.

At half past seven Dewey, out of consideration for his men, who had been on duty since four o'clock, ceased firing and drew back from the shore. His orders were, "Let the men go to breakfast." At eleven they returned to complete their work. Like monsters hurling bolts of flame at one another the two fleets and the shore batteries were once more in the

throes of battle. Soon the Spanish flagship and many other ships were in flames. Of our warships none was lost or even seriously injured. The victory was complete. The news of this battle was received with enthusiasm. To the commodore were tendered the thanks of Congress, and later he was made admiral.

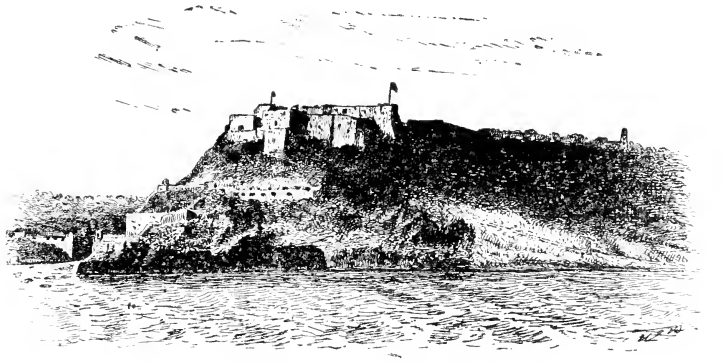
The Dewey medal presented by Congress to those who took part in the battle of Manila Bay

But to destroy the fleet was not sufficient; men and reënforcements were needed to take Manila and hold it. Until they came, Dewey's position was full of danger. When they finally arrived, our hold upon the Philippines was assured, and people began at once to discuss the commercial value of this group of islands.

Meanwhile, throughout the Atlantic, the American spyglass searched in vain for the Spanish squadron under Cervera, last seen on April 29 at the Cape Verde Islands. It was generally believed that the

Spanish commander was making for Cuba. Yet for two weeks the most vigilant eye failed to see the smoke of his ships along the horizon. Commodore Schley had been sent to play "I spy." It took him until May 28 to find Cervera, who had succeeded in making the harbor of Santiago, in Cuba. Acting Rear-Admiral Sampson, who had been blockading Havana, brought his ships to join Schley's, and took command of the entire fleet.

Blockade of Santiago



Entrance to Santiago harbor

The entrance to the harbor of Santiago is so narrow, and was so well defended, that a direct attack was out of the question. The situation called for clever strategy. Naval Constructor Hobson undertook to complete the blockade of the harbor by sinking an American vessel across its narrowest part. This would make Cervera a prisoner in his own place of refuge. For the purpose, Hobson was given the *Mer-*

rimac, and he proceeded to clear her of crew and equipment. To sink the ship by opening her sea valves, was too slow. In order to hasten the sinking, torpedoes, to be fired by electricity, were attached to her hull. Thus prepared, the ship was to be run into position. Then the anchors were to be dropped and the torpedoes fired. The vessel, it was hoped, would sink immediately.

Volunteers to man the ship were called for. It was explained that the work meant certain death, or at best imprisonment, yet scores pressed forward, eager to serve their country. Regardless of the danger, they clamored for this special privilege. Only seven of the large number of volunteers were taken. The little crew rehearsed the details of the plan again and again. Each man knew his post and his duty.

Soon after midnight, June 3, the *Merrimac*, at full speed, entered the mouth of the harbor. As soon as she was recognized, shot and shell bombarded her sides and splintered her decks, but no man faltered. When the critical moment arrived to whirl her around and place her directly across the narrow entrance, it was found that her steering gear had been shot away and she could not be brought into position. The next setback was the failure of some of the torpedoes to explode.

Prone upon the deck lay Lieutenant Hobson and his faithful men, realizing that their scheme had mis-

carried and that they were, perhaps, giving their lives for a failure. Not until the waves came over the bow, and the *Merrimac*, with a mighty tremor, settled in the deep, did they abandon her. Protected by life preservers, they clung to a floating raft. Often they had to sink into the water to chin level to prevent detection in the flashes from the Spanish search lights. At dawn, seeing that escape was impossible, Hobson hailed a Spanish craft and presently the eight men were pulled aboard, prisoners of war.

Their captors recognized the bravery of the little band and generously fed and clothed them. As they left the boat to be transferred to the Spanish prison, Hobson expressed his appreciation of Spanish courtesy. At the same time one of his men stepped forward and, on behalf of the crew, asked Lieutenant Hobson to convey their thanks to the Spanish crew. This display of good manners greatly impressed the enemy's officers. Hobson assured them that his sailors were but the type of American seaman. Such is the spirit and bearing of the American men before the mast.

The army in Cuba

While this had been going on the government had been raising an army to send to Santiago. More than 200,000 responded to President McKinley's call for volunteers. From all quarters they poured in. Among them were the cowboy of the West, the young man of fashion, the college youth — all sorts and conditions.

Yet war found them sharing one another's tents and carrying one another's burdens.

After the men landed in Cuba, the real hardships of war began. Santiago is six miles inland. Thither the soldiers pushed with all possible haste. The march developed into a wearisome struggle. The road proved to be a narrow, overgrown path. The intense tropical sun beat down like the heat of an oven. The pack became an unbearable weight. Presently the men were discarding their blankets, then their cans of meat and vegetables, — as much as they dared. But with nightfall came a sudden change of temperature. Men awoke shivering in the early dawn, only by noontide to suffer again that awful heat. Frequently sheets of cold stinging rain drenched them to the skin and chilled them to the bone. To plough through the deep mud meant tired muscles and weary backs. There is little wonder that many of our men never saw the battlefield, never felt the thrill of action, but died of fever in camp or hospital.

American soldier

The city of Santiago was protected by the fortifications on two hills, El Caney and San Juan. On the top of El Caney's hill stood an ancient fortress, quaint in structure but sufficiently well equipped with

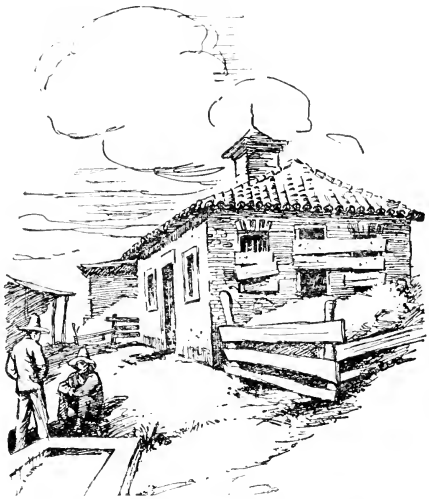
modern artillery to shatter the ranks of the Americans. About it the Spaniards had dug a trench for further protection.

The advance began in the early morning of July 1. As the army progressed, it became necessary to abandon the heavier arms. The men had to crawl on their hands and knees, for from every thicket Spanish sharpshooters picked off the boldest of the advancing soldiers. When one man fell, another leaped to fill his place, but it was slower work than they had expected.

Spanish officer

The commanding officer had hoped to make a quick dash and a brilliant capture, yet it was noontime and the work was still to be done. The men were chafing with suppressed excitement. In the face of a deadly fire they pushed on and on, now in one mighty rush, now in another. Finally at seven in the evening the flag of surrender floated in the breeze. Of the fort's defence, only one officer and four men remained unhurt. Both sides expressed admiration of each other's bravery. The Americans marveled that the Spanish had held out so long, and the Spanish officer spoke of the wild impetuosity of the American men who had dashed forward, their breasts bare, a sure target for the Spanish aim.

Meanwhile, at San Juan a similar fight under almost the same conditions had taken place. There was a high hill, with its intrenched stronghold, this time a well fortified farmhouse, the same difficult approach, the same blistering sun. The enemy had the



Spanish blockhouse on San Juan Hill

advantage in position and in knowledge of the land. To the Americans it seemed an endless uphill climb, through dragging underbrush and sweltering heat. Loathsome insects pestered the men, and heavy clothing added to their discomfort. It was a battle of individual bravery, of the grit of men. The soldiers love to tell of old General Wheeler, who had last seen action on the Southern side in the Civil War. Ill and half-crazed with the heat of the sun,

he cried out, as he saw the blockhouse fall, "There go the Yankees. Give it to them, boys!" The gallant spirit of his youth was in that cry, and the "boys" responded to it with a will.

At length the fort gave way and the Americans took possession. Early the next morning, the Spaniards tried to win back yesterday's losses. But the Americans, though still weary, were up and ready for action at the first call. This time they were defending, and it made them cool and sure.

General Cervera, who had been held in the harbor by Sampson's fleet, now attempted to escape. Then, on July 3, occurred the second of the two great naval engagements of this war. In four hours Cervera's fleet was utterly destroyed. He lost 600 men, killed and wounded, while the American loss was one man killed and one wounded.

Following this victory, our army demanded the surrender of Santiago. This was refused. Then it was threatened that by noon of the fifth our army would bombard the town. So, from the city, there began a pitiable procession of nearly 20,000 half-starved women, wasted children, and tottering old men. Many of them were sheltered and protected by the American army. This meant sacrifice on the part of the American soldiers, for their own supplies were meager.

The luster of this war is surely dimmed when one considers the useless suffering caused by the careless-

ness of the commissary department. Supplies were inadequate and their transportation poorly managed. Much of the suffering of the war might have been avoided. At best, war is horrible. The glory and excitement do not come to all. Those who lie for long hours, motionless in a steaming trench, suffer as much as the wounded on the battlefield. Inaction is sometimes harder to bear than pain. To the man shot down in battle it seems a long time before his eyes catch the gleam of the red cross which means help and care.

Red Cross Society

The Red Cross Society works on the battlefield or wherever terrible destruction reigns. It was founded in 1863, and now nearly all nations are represented in it. Its doctors and nurses know no enemy. They are permitted the freedom of the battle lines, and their emblem, a red cross upon a white field, protects them and their property. Thus it happens that the dying soldier may look up into the face of a soft-voiced woman. On her arm the red cross shows, and over her countenance shines the light of an unselfish spirit. The young lad, and many such there are in camp hospitals, finds a sympathetic hand clasping his as he bids a cheerful good-by to the limb which the surgeon says must come off. Messages are sent home for those who are too weak to write, and the hand that pens them is that of the Red Cross nurse. Many and varied are her duties, and in like proportion are the thanks and affection she receives.

"For we know that wherever the battle was waged,
With its wounded and dead and dying —
Where the wrath of pagan or Christian raged —
Like the mercy of God, where the battle was waged,
The Red Cross flag was flying." *

A Red Cross tent

The hopelessness of the situation became apparent to the Spaniards, and on July 17 they surrendered Santiago. At the first stroke of noon, from the flagpole above the red-tiled roof of the Spanish

* J. T. Napier: The Red Cross Flag.

palace, the red and yellow flag of Spain fluttered down from its proud place. Before the final stroke had sounded, the Red, White, and Blue waved in the breeze. The troops came to order. The band played the "Star Spangled Banner"!

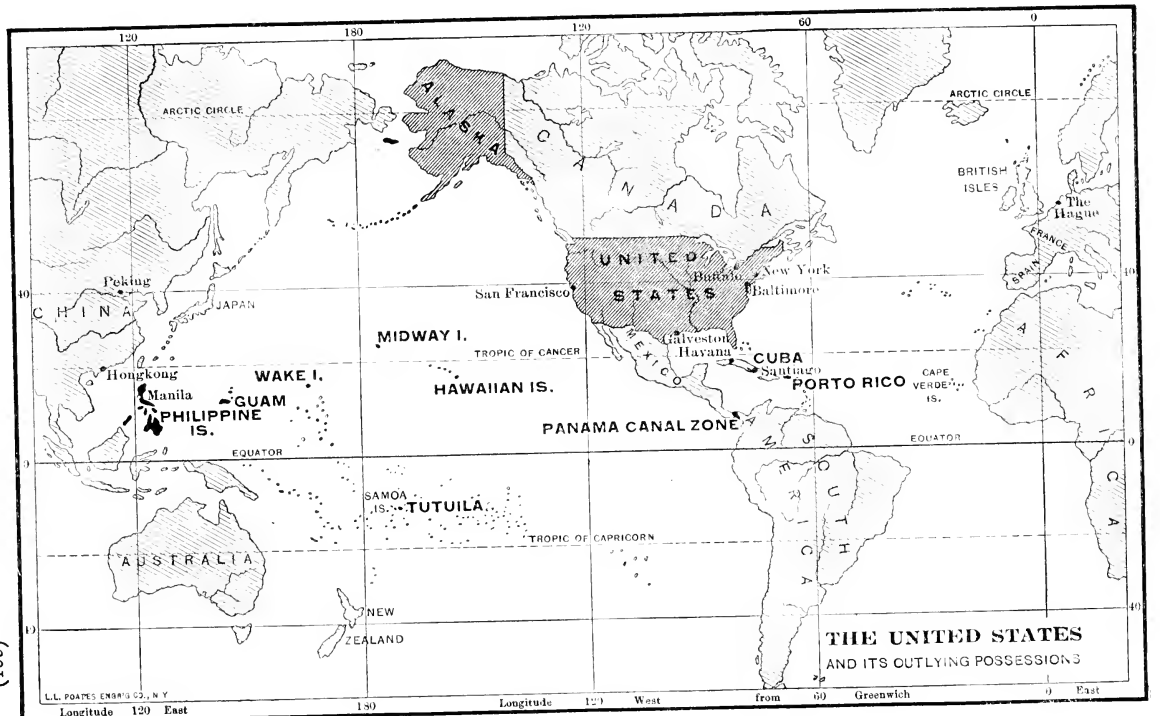
Peace

In December, the treaty of peace was signed. By it Cuba became a free country, though she was placed under the protection of the United States. In 1902 our care was no longer necessary, and Cuba, the republic, took her own place among the nations. By the same treaty Spain ceded to the United States: Porto Rico, of the West Indies, which our troops had invaded; Guam, one of the Ladrone Islands, which our navy had seized; and the Philippines, the scene of Dewey's victory.

So have we grown from the Atlantic to the Pacific and then beyond to a point of vantage whence we may look out upon the eastern world. As we have increased our territorial possessions so have we added to that vast number of true-hearted patriots who are loyal to "Old Glory."

FOR CAREFUL STUDY

The people of Cuba revolted against Spanish rule, and in 1895 declared their independence. The United States hesitated to interfere, although her sympathies were with the Cubans, who had been shamefully ill-treated by Spain. But early in 1898 our battleship *Maine*, lying peacefully in the harbor of Havana, was blown up.


120
180
120
60
0
ARCTIC CIRCLE
ALASKA
CANADA
ARCTIC CIRCLE
BRITISH ISLES
The Hague
FRANCE
SPAIN
UNITED STATES
Buffalo
New York
Baltimore
San Francisco
Peking
CHINA
JAPAN
MIDWAY I.
TROPIC OF CANCER
Galveston
Havana
CUBA
Santiago
PORTO RICO
CAPE VERDE IS.
Hongkong
WAKE I.
Manila
GUAM
PHILIPPINE IS.
HAWAIIAN IS.
MEXICO
PANAMA CANAL ZONE
EQUATOR
EQUATOR
SAMOA IS.
TUTUILA
TROPIC OF CAPRICORN
AUSTRALIA
NEW ZEALAND
SOUTH AMERICA
ATLANTIC
THE UNITED STATES
AND ITS OUTLYING POSSESSIONS
L.L. POATES ENGRG CO., N.Y.
Longitude 120 East
180
Longitude 120 West from 60 Greenwich 0 East

The United States declared war against Spain in April and proceeded to search out the Spanish fleets in the Atlantic and in the Pacific. Admiral Dewey, in the Pacific, made a speedy attack upon the Spanish fleet in Manila Bay, defeated it, and captured the city of Manila. Admiral Sampson, with Schley second in command, blockaded the Spanish squadron in Santiago and utterly destroyed it when it attempted to escape.

At the same time land operations were going on in Cuba. Santiago was besieged and forced to surrender. By the treaty, signed in December, Cuba was made free, and the United States gained Porto Rico, Guam, and the Philippines.

FACTS TO BE MEMORIZED

The War with Spain, 1898, was caused by cruel treatment of the Cubans by the Spaniards.

During the Spanish War, Manila and Santiago were taken, and at the close Cuba was freed, Porto Rico was ceded to the United States, and the Philippines were bought from Spain.

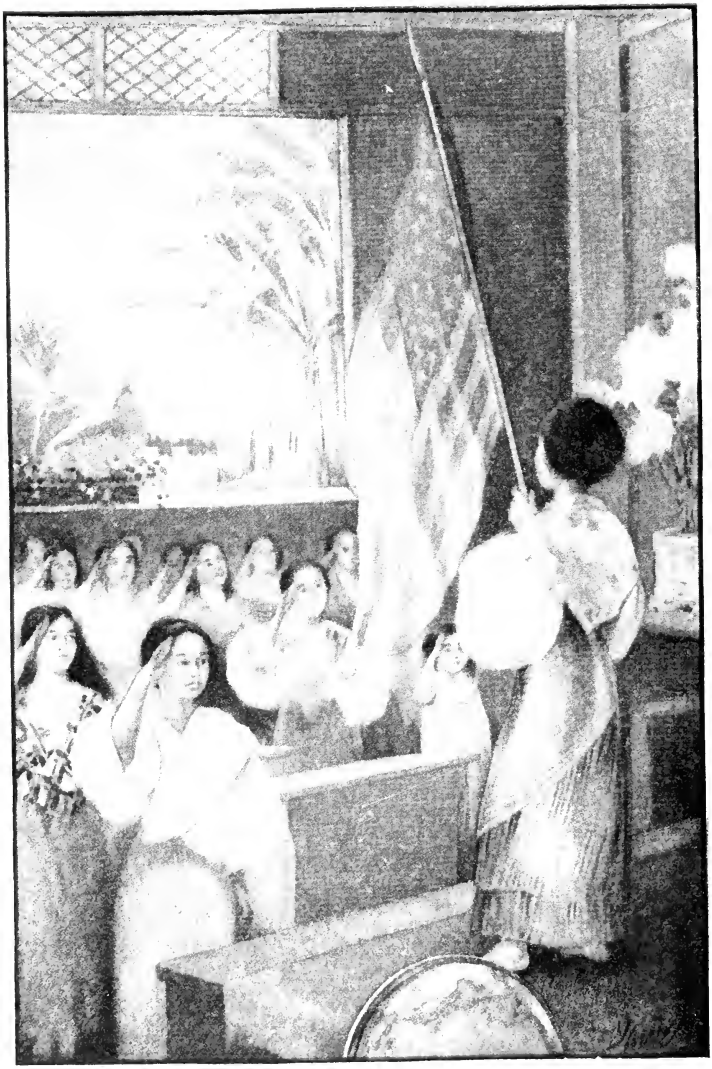
Bibliography

Barton. — Foote and Skinner: Makers and Defenders of America.

Dewey. — Beebe: Four American Naval Heroes.
Johnson: Hero of Manila.

McKinley. — Stratemeyer: American Boys' Life of William McKinley.

Spanish War. — Abbot: Blue Jackets of '98.
Allen: Cleared for Action.
Austin: Uncle Sam's Soldiers.
L. G. T. (Tisdale): Three Years Behind the Guns.
Matthews: Our Navy in Time of War.



"Stood shoulder to shoulder in salute"

CHAPTER XI

EXPANSION

"I PLEDGE allegiance to my flag and to the Republic for which it stands; one nation, indivisible, with liberty and justice for all." Throughout the length and breadth of our land, from Maine to California, from Minnesota to Texas, thousands of children daily pledge themselves to uphold the "Stars and Stripes."

It was an odd group of pupils that stood in a schoolhouse in Manila on Washington's Birthday, 1900, and saluted the American flag, a gift from the Lafayette Post of the Grand Army of the Republic. American children and Spanish, slant-eyed Chinese and dusky-skinned Filipinos, stood shoulder to shoulder in salute. Lustily their voices joined in singing "My Country, 'tis of Thee." And this scene was repeated in the other thirty-five schools of the Philippine capital.

The Philippines

When the United States established its government in Manila, one of the first things it did was to organize public schools. In time the chief islands of the Philippines were dotted with them. And now

hundreds of American teachers are at work, not only educating the children, but also training the native men and women to become teachers of their own people. Thus in time will the people of these islands be able to govern themselves. It must be remembered that America did not wage war with Spain in order to gain territory for itself. But after the war was over it found itself with Pacific possessions

Scene in the Philippines

on its hands. It saw that before these people could successfully manage their own affairs they must be trained to respect law and order. Millions of dollars have been spent by the United States in this work.

Even under Spanish rule some of the Filipinos, led by Aguinaldo, had fought for their independence. Spain made a treaty with them and paid the leaders several thousand dollars on condition that they leave the Philippines. When, not long afterward, Admiral

Dewey gained possession of Manila Bay, these leaders returned from their retreat in Hongkong.

Soon Aguinaldo and his friends had some thousands of men in arms against the United States. They declared that they had been fighting for independence and not for a change of masters. Our soldiers routed them from place to place. Finally the Filipino armies disbanded, but only to begin a guerrilla form of warfare. Fighting, not in the open, but in small groups scattered throughout the land, they would harry the American troops from ambush. It took several months to hunt them down and restore peace. Aguinaldo was captured. Soon afterwards he took the oath of allegiance. Other insurgent leaders were won over; in fact, some of them are now governors of Philippine provinces. Thus the Filipinos are well started on the road to self-government and independence.

The Philippines and the island of Guam, which also came to us as a result of the Spanish War, are not our only Pacific possessions. In 1893 the people of the Hawaiian Islands overthrew their royal government and established a republic. The following year this republic was recognized by our country. Five years later Hawaii was annexed, and in 1900 it was made a territory of the United States.

Hawaii

To-day one must journey very nearly halfway around the globe to go from America's most eastern territory, Porto Rico, to her most western, the Philippines. One result of this expansion is that the

United States has become a "world power." Now, as never before, the other nations of the earth must reckon with her. And we may be proud of the way in which America has exercised her new-found power. For one thing, she has taken her full part with the other nations in their dealings with China. She insisted upon the plan of the "open door." Through it America has the same privileges to trade with China that are given to any other country.

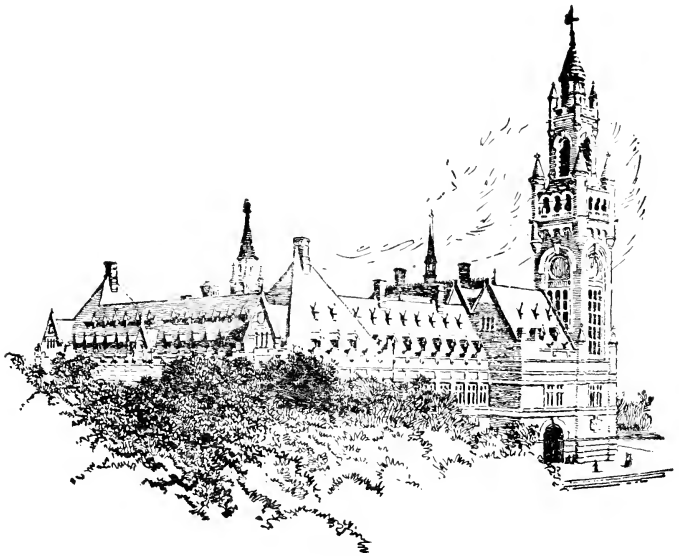
China

In 1900 the United States joined with Great Britain, Germany, France, Italy, and Japan in putting down an uprising of the Boxers. The Boxers were a Chinese society that planned to wage war upon the foreigners living in China. They committed many murders and threatened to kill all the foreigners in Peking. But the six nations acted promptly. They moved their allied forces upon the Chinese capital. The city was taken, the foreigners rescued, and peace restored. More than 15,000 American troops took part in this movement.

Another movement in which America has been active is that for the establishment of peace. Wars have been waged ever since men have inhabited the earth. Probably, too, war will continue to be the only way of settling certain kinds of disputes. But surely much of our warfare has been senseless. Long ago individuals among civilized people learned to settle their differences by taking them before a judge. There they argue the

Hague Court

matter, and then abide by the decision of the court. If individuals can in this way avoid fighting, why cannot nations? The Czar of Russia invited the nations to discuss the question. In 1899 delegates from twenty-six countries met for conference at The



The Peace Palace, at The Hague

Hague. The United States took an active part in this meeting as well as in another that followed. A court was organized to which nations might take their disputes for arbitration. The United States and Mexico were the first to take a case before the Hague Court.

In yet another direction the United States has completed a work of great importance to all nations.

For years people studied their maps of the western continent and sighed to think of the time and effort that had been spent in going from ocean to ocean by way of Cape Horn. Across the narrow isthmus that joins the two Americas it is but a few miles. If only a waterway could be cut through here, what a saving it would be!

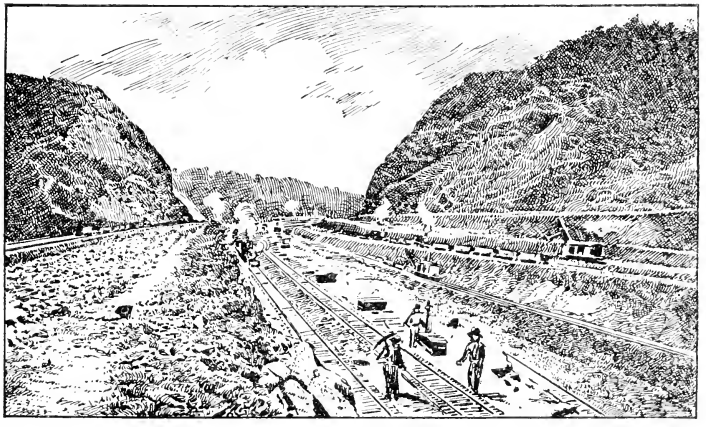
Panama Canal

This was brought home to us very forcibly during the Spanish War. The battleship *Oregon*, built in San Francisco, started to reënforce Sampson's fleet in Cuban waters. With all possible speed she raced the fifteen thousand miles around the Cape and arrived in time to take part in the battle of Santiago. But her trip gave our government much uneasiness because, for days at a time, it could not know how she was faring. Perhaps she had been overtaken by the Spanish fleet and, single-handed as she was, sent to her destruction. Could she have cut across the isthmus she would have made the trip in much less time and with less danger.

The project of cutting through the isthmus was not a new one. A French company worked at the problem for years, but without success. Our government saw that, if it were possible to construct a water highway between the two oceans, there would be an immense advantage in owning it. Forty million dollars was paid to the French company for its rights and property and ten million dollars more to the Republic of Panama for a strip of land ten miles

wide, known as the Canal Zone. Here was undertaken, at the further expense of hundreds of millions of dollars, the enormous task of cutting out of earth and solid rock a lock canal large enough to accommodate the giant ships of commerce and the dreadnoughts of war.

The canal is really a bridge of water, thirty-four miles long and eighty-seven feet above the ocean level. Near the Pacific end there is a mountain range. A cut had to be made through this mountain, and a ridge built up on the Atlantic end. So millions of tons of rock and earth had to be dug out — the Gaillard Cut,



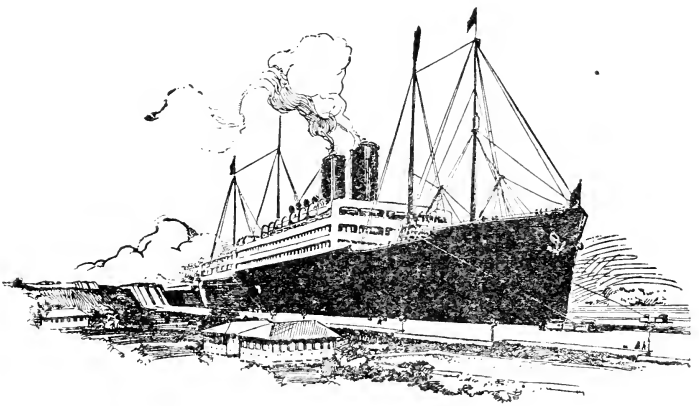
At work in the Gaillard Cut

as it is known — transported thirty miles, and built into an enormous wall — the Gatun Dam.

It was a huge undertaking, probably the most remarkable of modern times, but after eight years,

American pluck and American brains brought it to a successful end. It was opened to traffic in 1914. Many were the heroes who took part in this struggle with nature under the magnificent leadership of Colonel George W. Goethals, of the United States army, the engineer in charge.

The locks are opened and closed by electricity, and the ships are towed through them by electric locomotives. Although the canal is heavily fortified



Towing a steamship through the locks on the Panama Canal

against possible attack, it will be open for the commerce of all countries, and it is hoped that it will serve as one link in a chain of peace binding the nations of the world.

Thus, in many directions our republic has been expanding. Its interests now reach out far beyond the boundaries of the nation of a few years ago. Along

with this expansion, important events have been occurring at home. One of them concerns the place of women in politics. Wyoming is the state that first gave its women the same right to vote that it gives its men. To-day about one fourth of all the states grant the suffrage to women.

Woman suffrage

The Spanish War brought forward a question for debate: How shall we dispose of our new possessions? Then, too, there has been much argument over the tariff, over the coinage of gold and silver, over "trusts," and over many other matters.

Politics

The people seemed to approve President McKinley's handling of the Spanish War, for they elected him for a second term. They were not long to have him as their President, however. Once again the hand of an assassin did its ugly work. President McKinley was shot while holding a reception at the Pan-American Exposition in Buffalo. He died eight days later. For the third time the people of the United States mourned a martyred President.

Theodore Roosevelt succeeded to the presidency, and at the end of the term was reëlected. He was followed by another Republican, William H. Taft, who had served as a judge, as governor of the Philippines, and in other offices. The campaign of 1912 brought forward a new party, the Progressive, which nominated Roosevelt in opposition to the Republican

renomination of Taft. For the first time in twenty years the Democrats won. Woodrow Wilson, governor of New Jersey, became the twenty-seventh President of the United States. He was reëlected in 1916.

Of the many events during these latest years only a few of the more important are noted here. In 1902 the workmen in the anthracite coal mines in Pennsylvania — nearly 150,000 in number — struck, demanding better wages and hours. A coal famine was threatened, for the strike lasted five months. It was finally settled through the efforts of President Roosevelt, who induced the miners and their employers to submit their differences to arbitration.

There have been from time to time many other labor difficulties in various parts of the country. How to settle them with justice to every one concerned — the laborer, the employer, and the people who buy the products — is a difficult problem. It has yet to be solved, but steps have already been taken toward its solution. There are many labor organizations that seek to secure better conditions for their members. The largest of all is the American Federation of Labor, formed in 1881. In 1903 Congress created the Department of Commerce and Labor, and ten years later divided this work into two departments, that of Commerce and that of Labor.

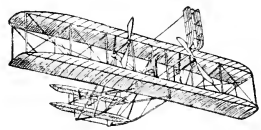
Labor troubles

Several wise laws have been passed during these years. One provides that when a person sells certain

kinds of goods and drugs he must tell honestly what they are. He is forbidden to sell adulterated goods under false names. Another law provides for the inspection of meats and other foods by officials of the government so that people may be sure that what they buy is fit to eat.

In invention America has contributed her full share, particularly in the field of electricity. Among her many ingenious inventors, Thomas A. Edison has a foremost place. His numerous productions, such as the phonograph and the arc light, have gained for him the title of the Wizard. But it is in the conquest of the air that the United States has perhaps the clearest claim to first place. As early as 1900, two brothers, Wilbur and Orville Wright, living in Ohio, experimented with aëroplanes. They designed their first machine in 1903. Five years later they made successful flights at Fort Myer, a government proving-ground near Washington.

Aviation



An aëroplane

Since 1900 three of our great cities have been visited with severe disasters. The first was a hurricane at Galveston; the second, a fire at Baltimore; and the third, an earthquake at San Francisco and in neighboring places. In 1912 floods broke through the levees on the lower Mississippi. In all these disasters, people were made homeless, some were killed, and property worth millions of dollars was lost. But in each case the hearts of the people throughout the land were stirred to sympathy, and they gladly aided their unfortunate countrymen.

Disasters

Since 1900, too, the family of states has been enlarged by the admission of three. Oklahoma, admitted in 1907, and New Mexico and Arizona, in 1912, bring the total to forty-eight, a number not likely to be changed for many years.

New states

We call this latest period our period of Expansion. We have steadily pushed our influence eastward, westward, southward. Perhaps the crowning achievement has been a record of brave conquest over stupendous natural difficulties, the conquest of the far North.

Peary and the North Pole

90° N. Lat., North Pole,
April 6, 1909.

"I have to-day hoisted the national ensign of the United States of America at this place, which my observations indicate to be the North Polar axis of the earth, and have formally taken posses-

sion of the entire region, and adjacent, for and in the name of the President of the United States of America.

"I leave this record and United States flag in possession.

Robert E. Peary,
United States Navy."

Forty-eight stars now grace the blue field of our national emblem. We can only dream of the glories that await this flag. Surely they will stand in history alongside the triumphs of the past.

"When Freedom, from her mountain height,
Unfurled her standard to the air,
She tore the azure robe of night,
And set the stars of glory there!" *

FOR CAREFUL STUDY

The period following the Spanish War has been one of expansion — our nation has extended its possessions east, south, and west.

In the east Porto Rico came to us at the close of the war. In the south we bought control of the Canal Zone, where we have succeeded in the stupendous task of cutting a ship canal across the Isthmus of Panama. In the Pacific we have Hawaii, the Philippines, and a few other islands. In the north the many expeditions in search of the pole reached a successful conclusion in 1909, when Peary raised the American flag at the North Pole.

* Drake: The American Flag.

Along with this expansion the United States has gained a growing respect among the nations of the world. It has taken its part in world affairs. It has had its influence in gaining fair play for China. It has borne its share in establishing the Hague Court.

Among the chief events at home have been labor troubles and strikes; the passage of laws which help to insure pure food and drugs; disasters from hurricane, fire, flood, and earthquake. The number of states in the Union has now reached forty-eight.

In politics, the two Presidents following McKinley were Roosevelt and Taft, both Republicans. Then, with the election of Wilson, the Democrats returned to power for the first time in twenty years.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Aviation. — Burns: Story of Great Inventions.
Holland: Historic Inventions.
North Pole. — Peary: Children of the Arctic.
Peary: Nearest the Pole.
Peary: Snow Baby.
Peary: The North Pole.
Panama. — Hall: Panama and the Canal.
Philippines. — Austin: Uncle Sam's Children.

"The newcomers stand in patient groups, watching the others land"

CHAPTER XII

LIFE OF TO-DAY

"Land! Land! I see land."

"No! No!"

"Yes! Yes! Yes! America! It *is* America!"

Away down in the forward part of a great trans-atlantic steamer an excited group of little foreigners have been watching since early dawn to catch the first sight of the great western country. Now, tumbling and pushing against one another, they crowd close to the rail, each trying to get a peep of the dim outline along the horizon.

"Mother! Mother! come quick. Here is America!" A small boy breaks away from his comrades and pulls a tired-looking woman with a shawl about her head to the side of the boat, where, in the hazy distance, the faint outline of the New Jersey shore is seen. For seven days the huge ocean steamer has been plunging across the Atlantic. There are over a thousand cabin passengers on board, many of whom have crossed the ocean several times. For them it has been a pleasure trip, but for the hundreds in the steerage below, it means the beginning of a new life. Crowded to-

gether in small quarters, many of them seasick, they have patiently endured all discomforts for the sake of the better times that are to come.

Immigration

For a long time our big country has been a refuge for the downtrodden and oppressed of Europe. Since 1880 immigrants have come to our shores at the rate of a half-million a year. At first they came from Great Britain, Ireland, and Germany; later, from Norway and Sweden. More recently it has been the peasants of Russia, Hungary, Italy, Greece, and other parts of southeastern Europe who have left their unhappy countries where taxes are high and wages low. There the poor laborer can earn scarcely enough to keep his family from starvation, and he has little hope of better things for his children.

In the peasants' huts wonderful tales are told of the great United States. There men are free, — free to speak what they think without fear of government spies, free to go where they will, to live as they please, and even to take part in the making of the laws. Wages are higher and people kinder. So the eager families sacrifice everything to get money to cross the ocean. Sometimes a relative on this side of the water sends home a small amount that helps. The good-bys are sad indeed, for in most cases the immigrant never goes back to his old home. Even if he does, it is not likely to be in the lifetime of the old father and the feeble little mother. Nevertheless, so strong is the

parents' love that sons and daughters are sent away though the hearts of the old people break at the parting.

How slowly the great ship steams up the bay! Plainer and plainer grows the distant shore; nearer and nearer it comes. Ah! there she is, that great tall lady whom people call the Goddess of Liberty. And

Part of New York

this is New York, the greatest city of the new world! How odd it looks against the blue sky! And where are the trees and the green grass of the homeland?

The steamer slows down gradually, and carefully stretches its great length beside a huge wharf. Here crowds of excited people wave and call to their friends on board. But not yet may the eager foreigners step on the enchanted soil. The boxes and the bags and the trunks of the first- and second-class passengers must be taken off first. Their owners, too, go ashore before the immigrants are allowed to land. The newcomers, with their few possessions tied up in a bit of

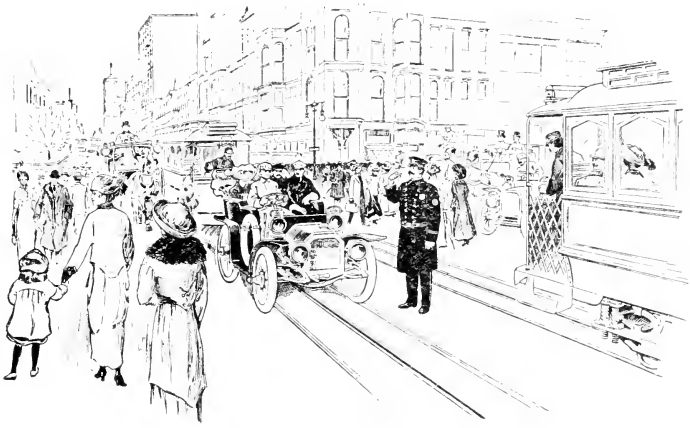
cloth, stand in patient groups watching the others land. How gay and happy the home-coming passengers seem! What beautiful clothes they wear, and how rich they must be! Fourteen-year-old Abie clasps tight the hand of his restless small brother and holds a little sister in the other arm. As he looks at his careworn mother, he vows in his heart that some day *she* shall have fine clothes like those of the lady who has just tripped lightly down the gangplank. *Her* hair shall be brushed until it shines and *she* shall wear a pretty hat upon her head.

All of these gay people having departed, the immigrants, little and big, are carried far down to Ellis Island. Here they are examined by a doctor. If one of them has a disease that might seriously hurt others, he is sent back to Europe, for America must guard the health of its people. The names, heights, and ages of all are taken. Each grown person must have a certain sum of money, he must know where he is going to live, and how he intends to make his living.

All this sometimes occupies a whole day, but at last the strangers are freed. Now it is their turn to clasp the hands of friends, to kiss relatives, and to laugh and cry for joy. The newly-landed strangers put themselves into the care of their guides. Then begins a series of strange experiences and rapid questions in many strange tongues. How tall the buildings are! Won't they

Life in the city

fall over? Where do all the people come from, and why is everybody in so great a hurry? Abie, in a vain attempt to dodge out of one man's way, gets straight in the path of another, and small brother is knocked down. The New Yorker, instead of showing anger, stoops and sets the youngster on his feet, saying, "There you are, sonny!" Are all Americans as kind as this?



A city street

Now it is time to cross a street, but how impossible it seems! Wagons, trucks, automobiles, clanging cars, all seem to be going every way at once. Suddenly they stop and a clear path appears. There in the center stands a tall blue-coated figure. It is he who, by simply raising his hand, has brought this order. Abie soon learns both to fear and to respect the policeman.

Having crossed the street, it is time for the party of immigrants to separate. Some are going far up town, almost outside the city limits, or to some other distant part of the city. Perhaps they go by the subway. What? Travel under the streets? Won't the earth fall in and crush you? And there is the elevated road. But that is nearly as bad, away up in the air. Surely the tracks will break, or the cars will fall off and come tumbling down into the street. Abie and the others of his family are piloted by their friends into an electric car. They stand in a corner; their bundles are in the way; the conductor scolds them. As he collects their fare he mutters something about "these foreigners." True, he has been here but a short time himself, but he already feels that he is a real American.

It is not long before Abie and his family will have the same feeling. As fast as they can they buy new clothes of American cut. The children are put into school immediately. At first they are shy, for they cannot speak the language. But teacher is kind, and the other children soon stop laughing at them, and help them whenever they can. Here they learn more wonderful things about this wonderful land. They are taught that this is a free country, but that freedom means respect for other people's rights. They must not injure the property or health of other people.

American schools

They learn, too, to take better care of their own

health. A sick person, they find, will be taken to a hospital, where he will be skillfully nursed. At first these strangers from other lands are afraid, when illness comes, to let their loved ones out of their sight lest something dreadful happen to them. But they soon understand that the hospital is a better place than their crowded homes. Then, too, if the disease is contagious, by sending the patient away they save their friends and neighbors from danger.

Much else, both in school and out, is new and strange. There seems to be no place for play but the crowded streets, where one must continually dodge wagons and automobiles. In the parks, where the green slopes look so tempting, there are signs which say, "Keep off the grass." Even the flowers are not to be picked. They bloom and blossom in brilliant rows, but they seem to say, "You dare not touch me." Other flowers there are, but they bud behind glass windows and are very expensive, — only the rich can buy them.

The life of the great city is very different from that of the country home which Abie left. Fruit is to be bought at a stand, not picked from a tree. Milk comes in a can or a bottle — one never sees a cow. Vegetables are sold either from carts along the curb or else out of boxes at a corner grocery store. Nobody raises plants, except perhaps just a few in a pot or two on the window sill. Houses, houses everywhere, with no fields or woods! So crowded, indeed,

are some of the neighborhoods that two or three families live in the same room.

Even if there were space to plant growing things, there would be no time to tend them. From early morning until late at night all the family, except the small children, work in shop or factory. There are great clothing houses where thousands of men and girls, as many as there are in a small city, cut, stitch at machines, or work by hand on all kinds of garments. There are great office buildings, twenty or more stories high. There are factories of all kinds. And there are the great stores where hundreds of people sell the myriad articles turned out by the factories.

City industries

Sometimes the workers labor under bad conditions. The light is poor, the air foul, and there is not sufficient protection against fire. But the government is trying to bring about a better order of things, though it is an uphill task. Here and there are employers who have the true spirit of America. If you visit their establishments, you will see that they give much time and attention to the welfare of their employees. They provide bright workrooms and tasteful, quiet restrooms for both men and women, and classrooms, too, where the workers are taught to increase their usefulness and so receive higher wages. Whoever learns how to do some one thing well can make his way.

America has been called the "land of opportunity." Certain it is that in our big cities a very great deal is

done to help him who helps himself. There are day schools of all grades, and colleges, and evening classes for those who must work during the day. No one needs money in order to make the acquaintance of books. The public libraries, with their rooms crowded with volumes piled high to the ceiling in orderly rows, provide books in our own and other languages. Many of the library buildings are very handsome. The walls and ceilings in the Boston Public Library are decorated with paintings of exquisite beauty.

In most of the cities, interesting and instructive lectures are given free to the public. Even to travel the length of one important thoroughfare, looking in the shop windows and reading the signs, is to learn many lessons in geography. We begin to realize what an immense foreign trade we have and how many people make their living by bringing the goods to us, and displaying them for sale. The soft gossamer-like silk you see in that show case came from China. Here is a leopard skin, spotted and tawny, brought from the jungles of Asia. Lying in a velvet case, all beautifully cut and polished, are diamonds dug from the dark earth by dark-skinned men. The gems are carefully guarded each step of their journey from southern Africa to the importer's shop. A string of them costs as much as a laborer earns in a lifetime. Yet there are people rich enough to buy them. So much wealth is amassed in the great cities — Boston, New York, New Orleans,

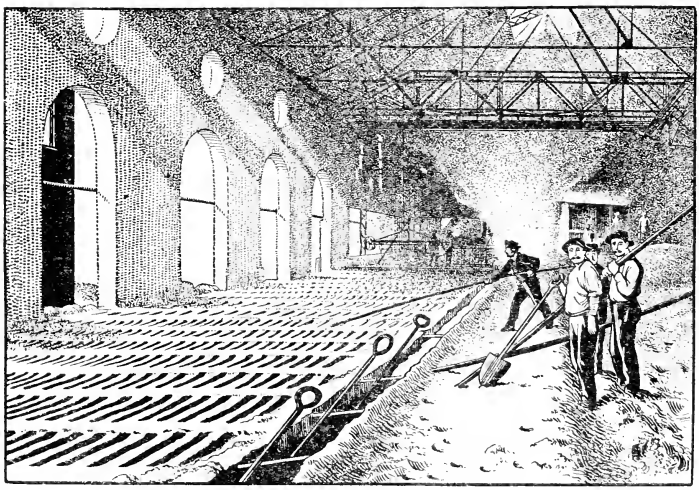
Trade

San Francisco, Chicago, and the others — that the mind of the immigrant is staggered by the signs of riches.

Many of the immigrants do not stay in the cities where they land, but go inland to the mill towns.

Steel manufacture

In the country around the great city of Pittsburgh, given over to the manufacture of steel, there are many such towns. Here English, Irish, Scotch, and Germans gather in one group, a great number of Slavs in another, and some negroes in a third.



Making crude iron

The mill looms up, a large irregular structure. Its many stacks pour forth filthy black smoke. Often the mills run day and night. The crude iron, as it

comes from the blast furnaces, is taken to what is called the "open hearth" department. Here huge furnaces, with their roaring fires, send forth such a blinding glare that the workmen have to wear smoked glasses. Into these furnaces the crude iron is placed, mixed with scrap iron, ore, and certain chemicals. It is next fired to a melting heat. Then the furnaces are tapped and the metal is poured into molds to cool. When the steel is needed for use it is heated again and goes to huge machines called "rolls." Powerful as giants, they turn out the great plates of metal from which are made the mighty dreadnoughts of war, the strong beams to support our skyscrapers, and the rails that carry our speeding trains across the continent.

There is grave danger within the mills as well as about the network of railroad tracks outside the buildings. The men grow accustomed to the chugging engines with their heavy loads, and become careless. The intense heat of the furnaces causes great suffering among the workmen, sapping their strength in the summer time and making them catch cold easily in the winter. The noise in many of the rooms is so great that after some years of service the workman can no longer hear lighter sounds.

But the men work cheerfully and happily. They put their hard-earned wages into their little homes. Most of these are small four-roomed cottages where love abounds. The dinner is ready for father when he returns at eventide. The best of the goodies is

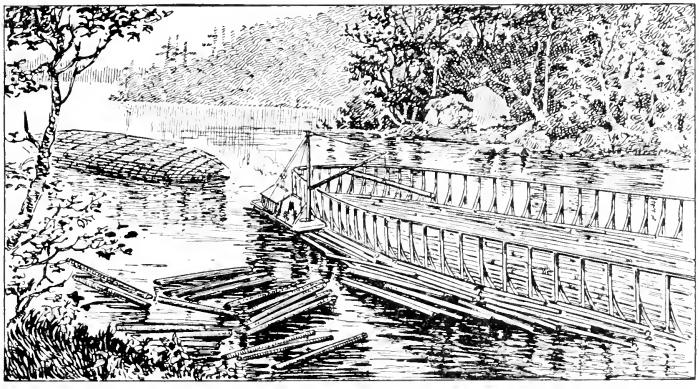
put aside for his dinner pail, for even the small children recognize how hard father works for them and how dangerous is the life of the steel mill.

Lumbering

Another great industry that attracts thousands of our population is lumbering. There was a time when most of the lumber camps were to be found in Maine. In fact, that state pictures the pine tree on her seal, with the motto, "I lead." When that region was partly exhausted, the center of the industry changed to the region about the Great Lakes. Now the great lumbering regions are the south and the far west. The states of the Pacific Coast are furnishing valuable woods, such as Oregon pine, California redwood, and Washington fir. The Navy Department has recommended that all the wood in our war vessels, except that used for decoration, be of fir. Even the masts on the German Emperor's racing yachts are from our great northwest. When you go to Windsor Castle, England, or to the Japanese Emperor's palace, you will see strange flags floating in the breeze above them, but the staff from which they flutter is American wood, stout Washington fir.

In a logging camp in the far west, just as in a factory, each man has his own part of the work to do. An expert selects the trees that are to be cut, and the way they are to fall. This he indicates by a notch in the side of the tree. Then come the two men called "fellers," with a long saw having a handle at each end.

As they saw well into the tree, the huge monarch of the forest sways, bends, and suddenly comes crashing to the ground with a terrific roar. So skillfully do they do their work that the tree falls within a few inches of the selected place. Next come the "buckers," who cut the tree into logs, and then the "barkers," who chop the bark from the side on which the log is to be dragged. After that the "swampers" clear away a path for the logs, and the "hook tenders" fasten them by heavy hooks to a long cable. In the eastern camps, horses or oxen are used to pull the logs; but the great size of the western timber calls for something stronger, so a steam engine is made to do the work, by means of a big reel.



Cradle and raft

At the river the logs are lifted by a derrick into a huge cradle. These cradle-rafts hold thousands of

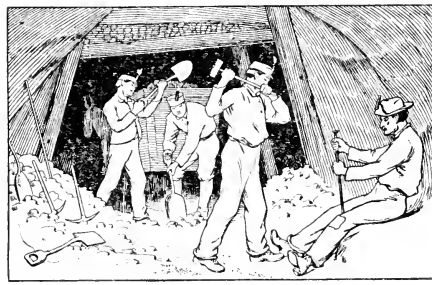
pieces of timber. The logs are securely bound with chains and cable. When all is in readiness, the cradle is taken away, and the raft, pulled by one or two tug-boats, goes floating down the river. The lumbermen wave their hats and shout a cheery good-by, for it is a huge piece of work which they have just completed.

Life in a lumber camp has its excitements, but they are chiefly the excitements of danger. The men live busy, hard-working lives. In the great solitude of the forest they throw up their rude camps, shacks of logs, stuck together with mud. Shelves of rough boards built along the sides of the camp are their beds. Wrapped up in blankets, the men sleep on balsam or spruce boughs. In the dim cold light of the early morning they crawl out of their bunks and go to breakfast. They eat like ravenous wolves, and the cook, provided he is a good one, is a popular man. If, however, he should happen to lack culinary skill, his life is hardly worth the living, for these strong sons of the forest punish pretty severely when they think punishment is due. In the evening they sit indoors about a fire, in a hot close room, singing or playing games. Occasionally they go on Sunday for a tramp through the woods or, perhaps, hunting or fishing if the sport is good.

Not all the workers in the life of to-day are in occupations that take them into the great out-of-doors. Some there are who must earn their daily

bread by going deep down into the earth. These are the miners. Into a great black hole in the side of a hill they go down, down to a region where no daylight enters. The coal miner carries a small light fastened to the front of his cap. With steam drill and pick he breaks the coal away from the sides of the tunnel. It is then placed in

Mining



Coal miners

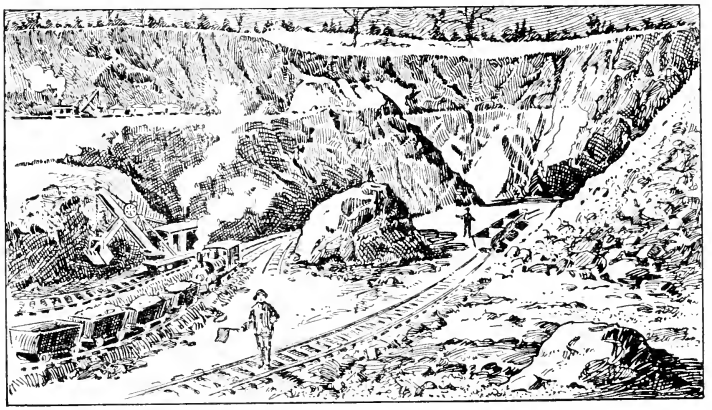
small cars and hauled, sometimes by donkeys, sometimes by electricity, to the shaft. Here steam engines hoist it to the surface. The miner's hours are long. He comes out of the shaft black and grimy, bent and weary. He goes with dragging feet to his little home, which is black and smoke-covered like himself.

But not the small wages, the long hours, nor the trying conditions can daunt the brave spirit of the miners. When disaster comes, as so often it does, they are ever ready to sacrifice themselves for their fellow workers. Eagerly they offer their services in the work of rescuing the men who may be crushed by a

sudden cave-in of the tunnels, or drowning in a flooded mine chamber, or suffocating from the treacherous gases that are so difficult to detect before the miner is overcome. Into some mines, the workers carry canary birds in cages. These little singers of sunshine are more quickly overcome by the gases than are their owners. So they give warning of the death presence. The miner hastily leaves the place and brings his feathered guardian to consciousness again. It is easy to understand how a close and tender relation often exists between the rough black miner and the little yellow bird.

Another mineral that is mined in great quantities is iron ore. The United States produces more iron, as well as more coal, than any other country in the world. Its great treasure house is about Lake Superior. There are various methods of mining iron ore, but the most interesting as well as the cheapest and best is the "open-pit" method. Into the pit on the side of a mountain range, a train of railroad cars is run. Then a steam shovel like a giant's hand pushes its monster fingers into the bank, and clutches in one grip five tons of loose red earth that is in reality valuable ore. The mammoth arm withdraws its huge fist and deposits its handful in the waiting car. It fills the car in only five trips and can do it in five minutes. Ten or twelve men are needed to handle each shovel, some to run the engine, some to feed the fire, some to manage the levers. They are a

thrifty and industrious class of men. Many of the iron miners are recent immigrants. Working under better conditions and better paid than the coal miners, they are more independent and progressive.



An "open-pit" iron mine

Still better conditions are found in the great harvest fields of the west. Instead of the cramped quarters of the mine tunnels, there are miles upon miles of waving grain, and the work is out in the blessed sunshine. Good hard work it is. One wheat farm will employ as many as four hundred or more men. They are divided into groups, and overseers on horses ride from group to group superintending their labors. At harvest time the wheat is cut by reaping machines drawn by horses. Long rows of these machines sweep across the wide fields like a slowly moving chariot race.

The great farms

Sometimes on the largest farms, a combined reaper and thresher is drawn by many horses or even by a steam engine. Such a machine can gather and thresh two thousand tons of wheat a day.

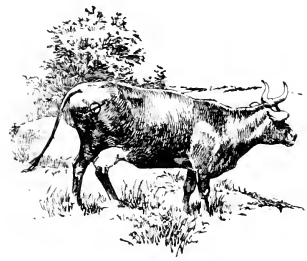
Reaper and thresher

These huge farms of the prairies buy their machines by the car load and their provisions in the same way. They must live independent of the big cities far away. Several bookkeepers keep the accounts; a store supplies the men's wants, which are not many. They are likely to save their money, for there are few ways of spending it. No theater or moving-picture house throws out bright lights against the evening darkness. Only the stars shine overhead. No public libraries open hospitable doors to the eager reader. The clang of the electric car is not to be heard. The men's boisterous laughter, as they gather together after the day's labor, sounds across the still air, and a horse in his stall whinnies an invitation to ride across the silent stretches in the close warm darkness.

Just beyond these great farms is the ranching district. The ranchman thinks of two things when he

builds his house and cattle sheds. They must be far away from his neighbor so that the cattle may have plenty of grass, and they must be near water, both of which are scarce in the ranching country. Sometimes a ranchman owns as many as twenty thousand head of cattle. These he brands, or burns, with a special mark all his own, such as a circle with a cross in it. Then he permits them to roam at will. Generally they keep within easy distance, but sometimes they stray away for as much as a hundred miles.

Cattle ranches



A branded cow

Each year the ranchmen gather all their cattle together. This is called a round-up, and it is a time of much importance. The first round-up comes in May or June, and its purpose is to gather together all the cattle and the little ones that may have been born during the winter. As each baby stays close to its mother, the brand makes it easy to separate the animals and to give each to its rightful owner.

The second round-up, which is in the fall, is to gather the steers together and send them out to the big cities. The ranch owners hire men to round up the cattle and drive them to the big markets. These cowboys are bold and vigorous. They can ride in the saddle all through the day and half into the night.

They can ford a river on horseback, driving the cattle before them. These westerners are wonderfully skilled in the use of the lariat or lasso, a long rope, often made of braided leather, with a noose on the end.

Sometimes one of the herd attempts to run away. Often he gets a good start before he is missed, but when he is, the cowboy is after him with a shout and gallop of hoofs. The steer ducks his head, snorts, and kicks up the dust with his prancing heels. The cowboy gains steadily, and presently is near enough to take accurate aim. Rising in the saddle, the reins in his left hand, with his right he whirls the lasso above his head and then, whiz! it goes cutting through the air, circling the charger's head, and, snap! is drawn tight around his neck. The animal stops short, rears, and protests, but presently is led back to the herd. It is a strenuous life, this of the ranch, and picturesque, but the ranches are fast being fenced in, and the cattle train is taking the place of the cowboy and his pony.

Truly it is a wonderful life that is to be found throughout the United States. And best of all, these people, — East and West, North and South, in cities and on the farms, at work in mine or in the factory, in the forest or on the ranch, newly-come immigrants or native-born for generations — all are Americans, proud of the history of America. And history is not a thing of the past only. We of to-day are making the

History in the making

history of the future, and there are many signs that we are to go on to even better things. Men are thinking more and more of their fellow-men. The wealthy are giving of their wealth to the less fortunate, — founding hospitals, libraries, schools, and many other helpful institutions, making life more worth living than ever before. America!

I love thine inland seas,
Thy groves of giant trees,
Thy rolling plains;
Thy rivers' mighty sweep,
Thy mystic canyons deep,
Thy mountains wild and steep,
All thy domains;

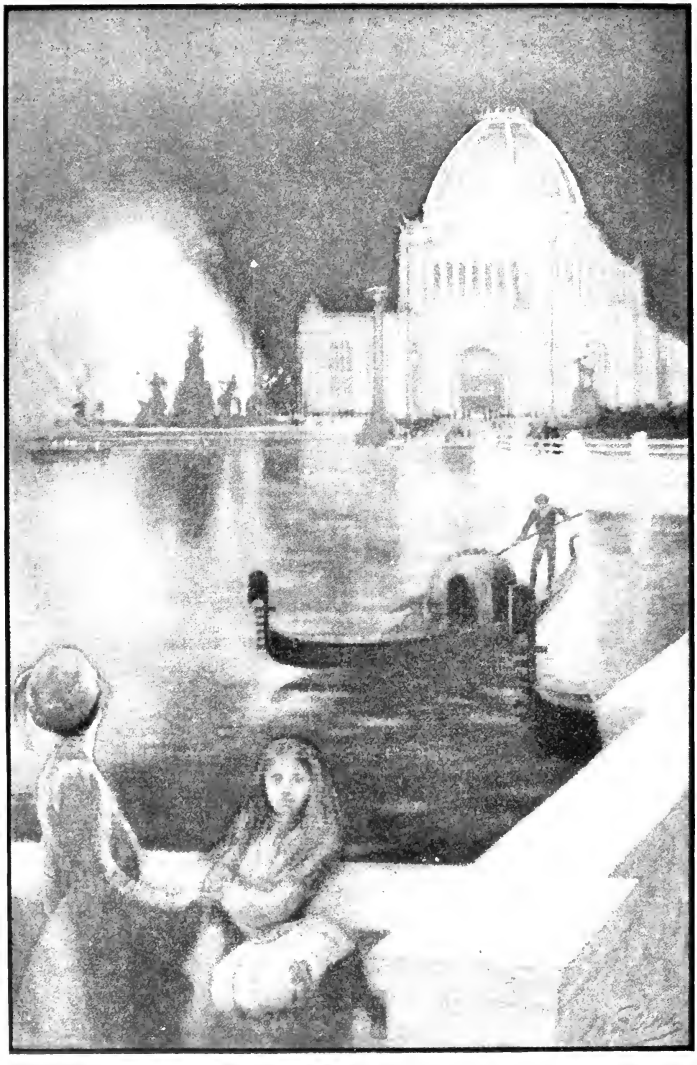
Thy silver Eastern strands,
Thy Golden Gate that stands
Wide to the West;
Thy flowery Southland fair,
Thy sweet and crystal air,—
O land beyond compare,
Thee I love best!*

FOR CAREFUL STUDY

We must not think that history is only something that happened long ago. The history that we study to-day is but the story of the life of the days gone by. And the life of to-day will have its place in the history that the children of the future will study.

* Henry Van Dyke: America.

When we see that our nation attracts hundreds of thousands of immigrants to our shores every year, we realize that the people of all countries recognize our power and millions leave their native lands to join hands with us. They wish to have a share in the making of our history, for history is made not only by the leaders, but by all honest, loyal citizens.



CHAPTER XIII

RECALLING THE PAST

THE spring days of 1876 awoke each morning to fresh surprises in beautiful Fairmount Park, in Philadelphia. All through the previous year builders had plied their trade unceasingly, erecting quaint and beautiful buildings over a level surface of two hundred acres. Foreign-looking men from many climes were unpacking odd-shaped cases marked with strange characters which carried no meaning to the American mind. There were Germans, Frenchmen, Italians, Japanese, Spaniards, and many others.

Centennial Exposition, Philadelphia, 1876

These strangers had come to help us celebrate the one hundredth anniversary of the signing of the Declaration of Independence. Thirty-nine countries brought their choicest wares to show to the hundred-year-old nation. Many put up buildings of their own, like those of their homeland. Twenty-six of our states had each its own building. In all there were about two hundred structures. Some were hastily built, intended only as temporary shelters; but others, such as Memorial Hall, which stands to-day, were well constructed and of unusual beauty,

Though not entirely completed, the exposition was formally opened in May. Wagner, the great German composer, wrote a march for the occasion. Whittier wrote a "Centennial Hymn," which was majestically sung by a thousand trained voices:

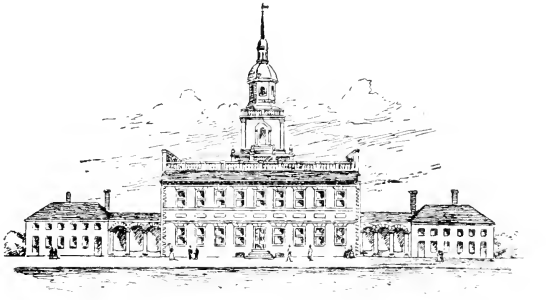
"Our fathers' God! from out whose hand
The centuries fall like grains of sand,
We meet to-day, united, free,
And loyal to our land and Thee,
To thank Thee for the era done,
And trust Thee for the opening one.

. . . . . .

"Be with us while the New World greets
The Old World thronging all its streets,
Unveiling all the triumphs won
By art or toil beneath the sun;
And unto common good ordain
This rivalship of hand and brain."

On July 4, 1876, in the rear of Independence Hall, Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, grandson of one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence, read that memorable paper to a great multitude. As he came forward holding tenderly the original document, now yellow and crumbling with age, the vast crowds rose and rent the air with their shouts. In the coldest of hearts the fire of patriotism was kindled. Nor were our people proud without cause. Despite its youth, the United States, in many of the exhibits, was in advance of the older nations.

It was generally admitted that we led in making labor-saving machinery. There was a plow so elaborate that it cost a thousand dollars. There was a line of sewing machines of many different makes stretching



Independence Hall, in Philadelphia

for a half mile. There was a machine for hatching chickens that to the visiting farmer seemed hardly short of magic. There was, marvel of marvels, a great steam engine supplying the power that moved all the machinery of the exposition. Its mighty strength set thousands of wheels whirling. They, in turn, put in motion machines that produced before the very eyes of the gaping stranger all sorts of useful articles, such as pins, boots and shoes, bricks, envelopes, candies, tacks, nails, corks, carpets, dress-goods, and shingles.

There too was the typewriter, an interesting machine, but at that time not considered of practical use. Much amusement was caused by the "lovers'

telegraph." It was like a modern boy's telephone, consisting of two boxes connected by a waxed string. The string carried the vibrations of the voice from one box to the other. Hardly more than a toy it was, but it hinted at the wonder to come. It was only a year later that Professor Alexander Graham Bell perfected the invention of the telephone. Today its slender wires carry the voice between distant cities, and are stretched for thousands of miles in all directions throughout our land.

Early form of the telephone

Not in every respect, however, did we find ourselves first. In the picture galleries we had no such masterpieces as European countries exhibited. The school exhibits of other nations taught us that we had progressed but slowly. Most of our school buildings were unhealthful and the school grounds unattractive. Through the succeeding years the nation has taken these lessons to heart, and numerous changes for the better have been made.

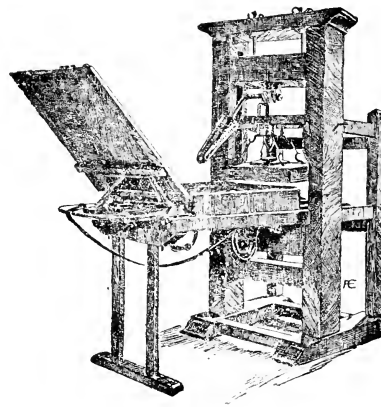
There were many things to be learned at the fair, and many people to learn them. It is believed that fully ten million people visited it. The railroads had lengthened their lines to accommodate the travelers; there were now 80,000 miles of railroad in the United States. To many of the visitors the trip seemed as hazardous as the far-famed voyage of Columbus.

They planned and they saved for the event. It made them half afraid, but with the kind of fear that sends one shivering on delightedly, step by step. To the children, and there were many whose small feet tramped the enchanted grounds, the promised visit meant seeing for the first time real Chinamen at work; dark-skinned people from Hawaii, who displayed beautiful pink coral and wondrous shells; oddly dressed folk from Egypt, showing embroideries of many colors; and, when nightfall came, above and about and everywhere, the gleam and twinkle of the countless lights.

To older heads, too, many things were new and strange. Previous to the exposition Americans had traveled little, even in their own country. They knew comparatively nothing of the possibilities of the great land that was theirs. Such fruit as California exhibited, such grains as came from the Middle West, were a surprise to the people of the East. The visitors from abroad, looking upon the products of the United States, were eager to buy them. Since this our first exposition we have, year by year, sent out from our land an ever increasing amount of goods, — more, in fact, than we have received from abroad.

Uncle Sam also took part in the Centennial Exposition. Among his exhibits perhaps the most interesting was a postal car in which clerks were at their work. They showed how mail is received, sorted, and delivered as the trains speed from station to station.

The printing business had an exhibit of special interest. The hand press at which Benjamin Franklin worked as a journeyman was there. Near it were



Benjamin Franklin's printing press

two large modern printing presses that were capable of making twenty thousand impressions a day.

At the entrance to the fair grounds was seen an immense arm cast in bronze, clasping a huge torch. It was part of a colossal statue, "Liberty enlightening the World," sent to us as a birthday gift by France. In 1886 the entire statue was set up on an island in New York harbor. Its light invites the nations of the world, saying: "Come to us. This is the land of the free and the home of the brave!"

So successful was the Philadelphia exposition that many other important dates in our history have been

celebrated in like fashion. In 1892 Chicago opened wide her hospitable doors and invited every one to the shores of Lake Michigan. "Come help us celebrate," we said to the nations, "the four hundredth anniversary of the discovery of a New World."

Columbian Exposition, Chicago, 1893

Right cordially they responded. Spain sent models of Columbus's three famous vessels, the *Santa Maria*,

The Liberty Statue, in New York harbor

the *Niña*, and the *Pinta*. She also sent a gracious princess to honor the occasion. From Norway there came a strange-appearing craft, a Viking ship, to

remind us, it was declared, that the Northmen were the true discoverers of North America. This boat was a model of one that had been unearthed with much difficulty. Its age could only be guessed at. It was seventy-six feet long, and the rudder was on one side. Upon its prow it bore a dragon's head, and upon its stern a dragon's tail. On a seat in the stern was the figure of a chief. The original of this boat is kept by the Norwegians in their national museum at Christiania.

The Chicago exposition far exceeded that of 1876 in size, covering more than one square mile. It was also attended by greater numbers. More than twelve million people visited the Great White City, as it was called. Plans had been made to open the grounds in October, 1892, but there was delay in getting things ready. The exposition was dedicated on the 22nd of that month, but the public was not admitted until the following year. The formal opening took place May 1, 1893. President Cleveland, in his address, said, "We stand to-day in the presence of the oldest nations of the world and point to the great achievements we here exhibit, asking no allowance on the score of youth." He extended a warm greeting "to those who have come from foreign lands to illustrate with us the growth and progress of human endeavor in the direction of a higher civilization."

At the close of his address the President touched a key in the platform before him. It was connected

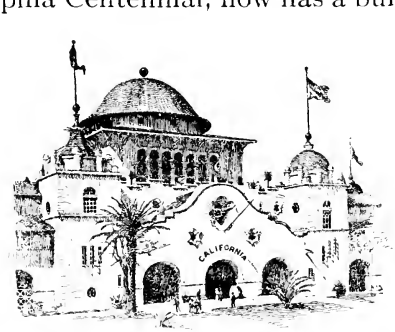
with a 2000-horse-power engine which started the machinery of the exposition. Almost instantly hundreds of flags were unfurled and many fountains began to play. The masses of the people surged back and forth and cheered vigorously. The year's wait had not been in vain.

One might wander over the spacious ground for days and always meet new wonders. What are the things to be seen? There are red men and women from the Indian reservations. Among the Alaskans are Split Oak and Dull Hatchet and Clumsy Moccasin, dressed in all the glory of Indian finery. They wear necklaces of bear's teeth, and belts from which dangle ghastly scalps. Over their shoulders and from their waists hang costly fur skins, which they drag through the dust of the exhibition grounds. The Eskimos, with their quaint squatty figures, also wear valuable furs. The furs remind us of Alaska's wealth. Evidently, we did not over-pay Russia when, in 1867, we purchased that territory for $7,200,000.

That curious rocky structure sixty feet high about which so many people stand is a model of the old cliff dwellers' homes. It has been copied from the remains on Battle Rock Mountain, Colorado. In its crevices and half-hidden passages whole families dwell. There is also a museum of articles used by the inhabitants of centuries ago, — these articles have been unearthed by the hard work of patient scientists.

The past and present are portrayed together in many exhibits. There is the queer De Witt Clinton locomotive, the first on the New York Central Railroad, and, near it, the road's newest passenger engine that makes a hundred miles an hour. There, too, is a beautiful model of the pilot house of a great ocean liner and some of its staterooms *de luxe*. How different from the accommodations of Fulton's *Clermont!* Out there on the blue waters of Lake Michigan is a model of a modern war vessel, the *Illinois*, whose obliging officers show how the guns are worked and describe the other details of the machinery of a modern sea-fighter.

So rapid has progress been that the telephone which was regarded with amusement at the Philadelphia Centennial, now has a building of its own. Here one may talk with friends at a distance, even as far off as New York or Boston. The telephone girls who operate the station sit in full view of the sightseer.



The California Building at the Chicago exposition

Most of the states erected characteristic buildings. For instance, California's was fashioned after an ancient adobe mission house. In the belfry hung old Spanish

bells, recalling the days when California belonged to Spain. That state also had a wonderful display of fruit in the form of a globe of golden oranges. As fast as they decayed they were replaced by fresh ones sent directly from the groves.

In Pennsylvania's building hung the old Liberty Bell, with its famous inscription. There were other treasures such as Jefferson's sword, and the chair in which he sat when he wrote the Declaration of Independence, the table on which it was signed, and a sofa that had once belonged to Washington. At the close of the exposition, Philadelphia took home her treasures, but she presented the building to Chicago.

Rhode Island, in her building, exhibited a picture whose wooden frame had been part of the house of Joseph Williams, Roger Williams's youngest son. Virginia reproduced Mount Vernon, the home of Washington. In it were shown many mementos of the Father of his Country. Michigan built a logging camp of pine, where a company of lumbermen lived, just as they do in the forest. Thus each state placed before the people of all the nations some picture that showed the part it had played in the country's story.

The World's Columbian Exposition was marked by the beauty of the statues that were placed about the grounds. In front of the Administration Building was a striking figure of Columbus. Near the Electricity Building was a statue of Franklin, a kite in his right hand, his left hand extended as if he had

snatched from the clouds the great mysterious force that was running the machinery of the fair grounds.

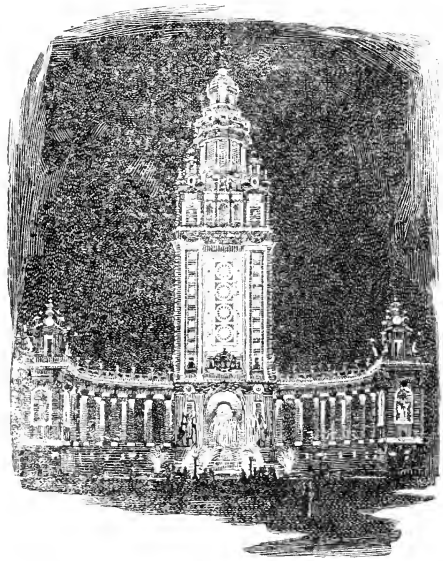
But of all the pictures that the Great White City stamped on the minds of its visitors none told more vividly of the progress of civilization than the series of floats presented on each of the first three nights of the opening week. The first float represented the Stone Age, showing the Cliff Dwellers; then the Bronze Age, with the Aztecs and Mound Builders; following them came a group portraying other American Indians; then the Departure of Columbus from Palos, the Discovery of America, Columbus presenting Indians to Ferdinand and Isabella. Next came an English Cavalier, then the Settlement at Jamestown. This was followed by Hudson, the Landing of the Pilgrims, De Soto and the Discovery of the Mississippi, and the Signing of the Declaration of Independence. There were floats to represent such great forces as Electricity, and others that pictured War, Peace, and Agriculture. Thus did history pass in review before the visitors.

Pan-American Exposition, Buffalo, 1901

In 1901 Buffalo held an exposition that was distinctly American; that is, no European or Asiatic nation was invited. Only the people of North America and South America were represented. When the suggestion was first made, at a banquet, it was immediately accepted, and nearly a million dollars was subscribed by private citizens.

The exposition grounds were a mile long and a half mile wide. The buildings were unusually beautiful in line and coloring. Here was no "White City," but a "warmth and wealth of colors," making it the "Landscape City."

Richard Watson Gilder wrote: "Here by the great waters of the north, are brought together the peoples of two Americas, in exposition of their resources, industries, products, inventions, arts, and ideas."



The Court of Fountains, at the Buffalo exposition

This Buffalo fair, known as the Pan-American, showed the great strides that had been made in the use of electricity in the eight years following the

Columbian Exposition. Several electrical companies had each a building of its own, in which it exhibited wonderful machinery for the use of this power.

It was at night that one appreciated best the exquisite beauty of the fair grounds. When twilight came the buildings were almost deserted. Everybody went to the Court of Fountains to watch the illumination. First the lamp-posts took on a delicate glow, until they resembled tiny pink buds. Then the eaves and the archways and the domes of the buildings were faintly outlined against the evening sky. Soon the lines began to sparkle, and then — a wondrous, dazzling burst of light!

Most of the power that made this fairyland was furnished by the mighty waters of Niagara. They set in motion immense turbines, connected with dynamos. These produced the electric current that was carried through wires to Buffalo, miles away. By telephone one might listen to the roar of the waters, as it sounded in the Cave of the Winds, under the falls.

As in former exhibitions, the natives of America were an interesting feature. There were structures to represent the old homes of the mound builders and some remains of the Aztecs and Peruvians. There was a Six Nation village, where the descendants of the great Iroquois showed their white brothers how the Indian lives to-day. Twenty-five tribes from west of the Mississippi were represented, headed by such famous chiefs as American Horse. There, too,

was a Filipino village, such a village as Dewey's men saw in 1898.

The Pan-American has been called an out-of-doors exposition, partly because of the exterior beauty of the buildings and partly because of the many open-air attractions. The small boy visitor watched with great enthusiasm college games, baseball, football, basketball. There were tournaments and all sorts of American sports.

Crowds flocked to Buffalo. The exhibition grounds were well policed, but despite all vigilance a madman made this his opportunity to plunge the nation into mourning. It was here that President McKinley, while holding a reception in the Temple of Music, was shot. It was thought, at first, that the President would recover, but when on September 14, 1901, he died, a deep shadow swept over the exposition, as over the whole country.

Three years after the Buffalo fair, the acquisition of the Louisiana Territory was celebrated at St. Louis. With pride its citizens pointed out that one of their city blocks represented more money than we had paid France for the entire Louisiana Territory. The population of that area now numbered over fifteen million. Here was the most important wheat and corn producing region in the world.

Louisiana Purchase Exposition, St. Louis, 1904

The exhibition was opened by a gorgeous procession headed by Cardinal Gibbons. Clad in the red robes

of his church, he held out his hands in invocation and prayed: "May this vast territory which was peacefully acquired a hundred years ago, be for all time to come the tranquil abode of millions of enlightened, God-fearing, and industrious people, engaged in the various pursuits and avocations of life."

The honor of opening the exposition was given to President Roosevelt, who said, "The old pioneer days are gone with their roughness and their hardships, their incredible toil and their wild, half-savage romance. But the need of the pioneer virtues remains the same as ever."

The directors of the Louisiana Purchase Exposition had decided early in the making of their plans, that the exhibit should be educational. It was to show the people how the great industries of their country were carried on; how finished products which they bought at the counter were made. There one might see the preserving of tomatoes from the time they were picked from the vines until they were sealed away in air-tight cans. Through a glass window one might watch a series of wonderful machines. A log would be shoved in at one end and out of the other would come — newspapers! Children could see the stitching and the binding of such books as they used in school — geographies, histories, arithmetics.

The Educational Building showed the efforts made to help the negro and the Indian. The deaf and dumb, the blind, the feeble-minded are all, it was

shown, provided for by the more fortunate. There, too, was an X-ray apparatus, that wonderful invention given to humanity by a German scientist. It

Photograph taken with X-rays

seems to give to the eyes of the surgeon the power of a magician, showing him just where to operate for the relief of his patients.

Curious crowds were interested in the workings of the theatrical stage from behind the scenes. They could learn how flashes of lightning and peals of thunder are made, as well as many other secrets of the stage manager.

Man's conquest of nature was portrayed. There was a model showing the working of the Pike's Peak railway and another of the Suez Canal. There was a miniature of the steel arch bridge at Niagara. On a

small scale, the irrigating systems as used in the American desert were shown. One might see, too, the underground workings of a gold mine, the tunnels and the slopes and the shafts.

Even nature had been forced to reproduce some of her marvels. Under the United States Bureau of Plant Industry six acres near the Agricultural Building had been laid out to represent the United States. The scale was one-half inch to the mile, and the border lines of the different states were marked off by cinder paths. The products of the central region had been planted in the regular season. Those of the warmer climates had been forced under glass. Mississippi, Louisiana, Florida, and Georgia, for example, showed how their cotton, sugar cane, and fruits grow. Minnesota had one fifth of an acre, where wheat, rye, barley, and corn flourished. Another part of the exhibit showed how to cure the diseases that attack garden plants. Still another showed that the sand dunes can be made to grow vines and other green things.

Nor were all the wonders confined to the ground. The kingdom of the air had many things to exhibit, — gliding machines, aëroplanes, and wireless telegraphy.

This, indeed, was a marvelous exhibition. So thought the little girl, following a wizard who showed her how a doll is made to open and shut its eyes and to talk. So thought everybody, particularly when there descended suddenly upon them a sharp,

short snowstorm! This, produced in midsummer, was another illustration of the wonders of science.

These have not been the only expositions by which the Americans have reviewed the past and gained some hint of the future. The southern states have, twice at Atlanta and again at New Orleans and at Charleston, celebrated their prosperity by Cotton Expositions. In 1897 Tennessee had a "Centennial and National Exposition;" in 1898 Omaha, the "Trans-Mississippi and International Exposition;" and in 1895 Portland, Oregon, the "Northwestern Industrial Exposition." In 1907 the three-hundredth anniversary of the founding of Jamestown was celebrated by an exposition held at Norfolk, Virginia. The Alaska-Yukon Exposition, held on the grounds of the University of Washington in 1909, declared its object to be "to exploit the resources of Alaska and the Yukon territory, to make known the vast importance of the trade with the Pacific Ocean and to demonstrate the marvelous progress of Western America."

Other expositions

In 1915 an exposition was held at San Francisco to celebrate the opening of the Panama Canal. Edwin Markham, the poet, wrote in terms of glowing praise: "I have to-night seen the greatest revelation of beauty that was ever seen on earth. I say this, meaning it literally and with full regard for all that is known of ancient art and architecture, and all that the modern world has heretofore seen of glory and grandeur. I

have seen beauty that will give the world new standards of art and a joy in loveliness never before reached. This is what I have seen — the courts and buildings of the Panama-Pacific Exposition illuminated at night."

These celebrations varied in purpose, and in displays, and yet what did they all show? Not the glories of war, but the triumphs of peace. It is true that guns and swords were displayed, but a comparatively small place was given to military exhibits. Does not this show that, after all, the American people are devoted to the arts of peace? In times of great need we have felt obliged to resort to arms to settle our differences. Let us hope that, throughout the future — as in many cases in the past — we may adjust all our disagreements by the dignified method of arbitration.

Let us hope, too, that our beloved nation may continue to stand before the world's powers as a united people ready to help the weak of all lands. The gun and the sword may have their place, but the nobler duty to one's country is in faithful labor in the field, the shop, the office, — and in public service.

"Thou, too, sail on, O Ship of State!
Sail on, O Union, strong and great!
Humanity with all its fears,
With all the hopes of future years,
Is hanging breathless on thy fate!"*

* Longfellow: The Building of the Ship.

A school garden in war time

CHAPTER XIV

THE WORLD WAR

THE Secretary of War stood blindfolded. A tense silence filled the room. The camera men and the moving-picture men, alert and eager, the newspaper writers, and the military officers, waited. Quietly and with deliberation, the Secretary stretched out his hand and put it into a deep, wide-mouthed glass bowl in which were thousands of small capsules, each containing a paper bearing a number. The Secretary drew forth one of these and the number was read.

The draft of 1917

This simple act marked a new step in our country's history. It was our new way, the American way, of calling our young men to service in defense of the nation. In 1775 Paul Revere rode "to every Middlesex village and farm," with his cry "To arms!" In 1861 President Lincoln called for volunteers. But in 1917, when the United States entered the great World War, the people decided that calling for volunteers alone was not the best way to raise the armies of democracy. Nor did they believe in a compulsory military service that makes every man in the nation a soldier. As President Wilson said, "The nation needs all men; but it needs each man,

not in the field that will most please him, but in the endeavor that will best serve the common good." Therefore our men were chosen for service in the World War by selective conscription, that is, the government determined which of them should carry arms and which should work for the war at home.

Reasons for the draft

The law which expressed this new idea was not enacted without debate. Its friends fought valiantly for it and the arguments in its favor were convincing. Said one Congressman, "A man is told exactly what his 'bit' is. If he is not called upon for service, he can continue his vocation with the assurance that if the Government wants him, it will call him, and that so long as it does not call him he is doing the proper thing to stay where he is." "Not all the red-blooded young men are needed in the army," another Congressman pointed out; "millions are needed on the farms. A doctor is of more value just behind the firing line than in the line. In the firing line he would have but one life to give his country. Behind the lines he might save hundreds of lives for his country." "It is democratic," said another; "the man who has driven the racing automobile will find himself next in line to the chauffeur of a wheelbarrow. Each will learn that the other is, after all, a good sort of chap."

It was in May, 1917, that the law was enacted. June 5 was fixed as registration day and the newspaper headings that morning read "America Enrolls

To-day for the Fight." Said one of the newspapers, "In self-defense, to save America, to preserve our national self-respect, ten million Americans will register their names to-day, prepared to respond hereafter to any call for service the nation may make. They have already volunteered. The whole nation has volunteered."

American soldier wearing gas mask

After registration the men were divided into classes so that the first to go should be those who were the least needed at home. In addition, it was necessary to decide the order in which the men of each class were to go into military service. This was the purpose of drawing the numbers by lot. That determined which were first to join the great hosts of youths so soon to go across the sea to take part in the struggle to "make the world safe for Democracy."

Outbreak of the World War

It was in the summer of 1914 that the world awoke one morning to read that the crown prince of Austria and his wife had been murdered by a Bosnian. Like many other people of southern Austria, the assassin was of the Serb race, many of whom wanted to have their home land taken away from Austria and annexed to Serbia. About a month later Austria sent a note to Serbia blaming her for the murder and making several unfair

demands on her by way of payment. Serbia was willing to sacrifice a great deal in order to keep peace with Austria. She met most of the demands, and offered to let the others — the most unreasonable of all — be settled by arbitration; but this Austria refused. On July 28, 1914, Austria declared war on Serbia, a nation less than a twelfth her own size. In so doing, she had the advice and support of her ally, Germany.

For more than thirty years Germany, under the rule of Prussia, the largest German state, had been getting ready to make war. Some people in other lands realized it, but many hoped that the day of wars was past. They felt that everybody was so busy trying to make the world a better place in which to live, that there seemed no time to spare for waging war or for preparing for it.

Now we see that the Prussian rulers of Germany had been getting their country and their people ready for war. They had taught the people to believe that military strength was a nation's highest ambition — by it one could rule the world. Germany's empire was crowded; she wanted more territory. She was jealous, too, of England's great commercial power. Her rulers planned to spring on the world, surprised and unprepared, and thus fulfill all their ambitions.

Russia, a great nation much like the Serbs in race and in religion, made ready to come to the aid of little Serbia. Germany demanded that Russia stop mobilizing her troops, even though Austria was rapidly call-

ing her men to arms. Russia was not to be frightened into deserting a kindred nation, and she went ahead gathering her army together. With this as an excuse, Germany declared war on Russia. France, faithful to her promise to Russia to help in time of war, called her men to the front. Then Germany declared war on France.

The opportunity Germany had been looking for seemed to be at hand. She would make a sudden rush on France, crush her, turn on Russia, and place both nations under her heel. Then after a rest, she would reorganize, force her conquered peoples to battle for her and provoke another war, this time with England and the new-world nations.

Germany's plan of attack

The boundary line between Germany and France was less than a hundred miles long. Both nations had this strip well fortified. France, however, left her Belgian frontier unprotected because a special treaty had been signed by the Great Powers of Europe, — Austria, France, Great Britain, Prussia, Russia, — and by Belgium herself, providing that in time of war Belgium was to remain a neutral country; that is, Belgium was not to take sides or help either side or permit any nation to use her territory for military operations. France, trusting in the sacredness of treaties, felt safe on her Belgian borderland. It was, therefore, through Belgium that Germany sought to enter France. She was willing to sell her honor for military advan-

tage. She was ready to break her word and to commit a horrible crime upon an innocent nation.

Germany first demanded of Belgium permission to march through her lands to France. Belgium refused, for she could not break her promise to the other nations. She said to Germany, "The Belgian government would, by accepting the propositions . . . sacrifice the honor of the nation while at the same time betraying her duties toward Europe." Then Germany broke her promise to Belgium and the other countries and invaded the little land. Even had there been no treaty making Belgium neutral territory, ordinary justice should have saved her from this assault.

The man who was "every inch a king," Albert of Belgium, gathered together his small army and tried to stop the invaders. They were pitifully outnumbered by the hosts of gray-clad, tramping men who swarmed over almost all of the country, bringing with them such misery, horror, and crime as seems almost unbelievable in these days. In some places homes were burned, crops were destroyed, men were murdered, women were taken away in chains, and even little children were cruelly mutilated. Such sacrifices could not be in vain. Belgium, with her bleeding hands, held off the enemy for days, and by delaying his advance, helped to save the civilization of the world from being wrecked by the Germans.

The crushing of Belgium

Belgians fleeing from the German invaders

When Germany declared that as a matter of "life and death" she was "compelled" to invade Belgium, England's ambassador in Berlin said, "It was, so to speak, a matter of 'life and death' for the honor of Great Britain that she should keep her solemn agreement to do her utmost to defend Belgium's neutrality, if attacked." And she did. Though unprepared for war, England, on August 4, 1914, took up arms against Germany. Japan,

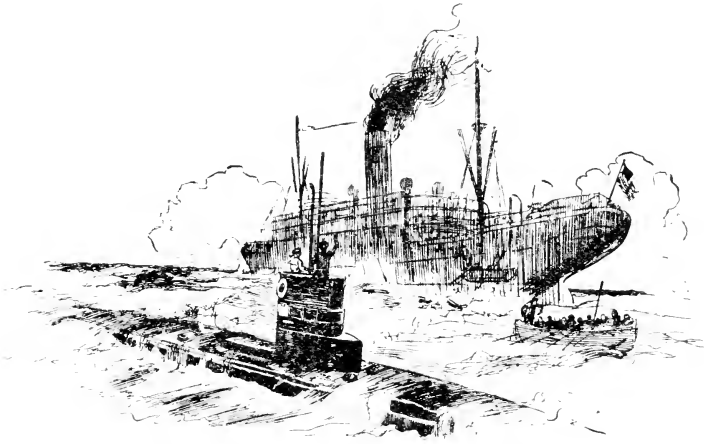
Other countries in the war

in accordance with an agreement with England, came to her side. Germany and Austria had counted on Italy as an ally, but Italy's agreement was to stand by those countries only if they were attacked. Italy declared that the Central Powers had not been attacked but were waging a war of offense. Hence she refused to join them, and later declared war against them. Other countries also entered the war on the side of the Allies: Montenegro, Roumania, San Marino, Portugal, United States, Cuba, Panama, Greece, Siam, Liberia, China, Brazil, Guatemala, Nicaragua, Costa Rica, Honduras, Peru, Haiti.

Many reasons led all these nations to array themselves against the Central Powers, — Germany, Austria, Bulgaria, and Turkey. Treaties had been broken. Germany's own prime minister at the outbreak of the war referred to a treaty as a mere "scrap of paper." This is not the way nations grow in understanding and respect for one another. The more powerful the nation, the more it should feel bound to respect its treaties. Germany disregarded the rights of small nations. By her cowardly and unlawful use of her submarines, she made the high seas unsafe for neutral vessels. She scattered her spies far and wide. Into all the civilized countries they made their way, winning the confidence of the people and then betraying them.

Germany's ideal of government differed very greatly from that of the Allies, and most particularly from our

own. We believe, in the words of our beloved Lincoln, in a "government of the people, for the people, by the people." Germany believed that the people were to do the will of their rulers, and these rulers had filled their people with false ideals, such as hate and fear of other nations. For the sake of these deceived people, for the sake of small nations, for our own safety, for the good of mankind, the military power of Germany had to be broken.



The submarines sank many unarmed ships

The war in France

Because in 1914 Germany sprang like a wild beast upon her prey, France staggered and almost fell under the first terrific onslaughts. The German army nearly made good the boast to "be in Paris in six weeks." At the battle of the Marne, in September, 1914, the heroic French, helped by as many soldiers as England could get to the

front, held off the foe and saved their loved capital. The enemy's next great offensive was at Ypres, in Belgium. The Germans hoped thus to reach and control the English Channel. This would have greatly endangered England. Once more they were held.

Then in 1916 the Germans struck to the south at Verdun, expecting to reach Paris this way. Once more they were resisted and held in check. In May of that year the German fleet ventured forth from its hiding in the Baltic Sea, but in the Battle of Jutland was so repulsed as to compel it to withdraw once more to the refuge of the inland waters.

The Russian revolution

In the beginning of the war Russia threw herself heart and soul into the struggle and fought many battles for the Allies. In March, 1917, a great revolution took place. The autocratic government was overthrown and a democracy was established. "Good," said the democratic nations of the world, "we are glad to welcome you into our family." But alas! Russia's ideas of democracy were not true ones. Instead of every one turning to and working for the good of all, each group tried to gain control of the government, and so it passed from hand to hand. Here was Germany's chance. She took advantage of this pitiable internal weakness. Through her spies and her bribes she succeeded in making so-called peace with Russia, a peace that placed Russia back under the heel of autocracy — this time the greatest autocracy in the world.

By her conquest of Russia Germany greatly increased her territory in Europe, but she at the same time sank lower in the eyes of the world. Though she controlled much of Russia, Germany had lost all her colonies. Her ally, Turkey, likewise met with heavy reverses. She was badly beaten in Asia. Among her losses, in 1917, was the Holy City, Jerusalem.

Losses of the Central Powers

For almost three years the United States used every possible and honorable means to keep out of the struggle. "It is plain enough," said President Wilson in 1917, "how we were forced into the war. The extraordinary insults and aggressions of the imperial German government left us no self-respecting choice but to take up arms in defense of our rights as a free people and of our honor as a sovereign government. The military masters of Germany deny us the right to be neutral. They filled our unsuspecting communities with vicious spies and conspirators. They sought by violence to destroy our industries and arrest our commerce. They tried to incite Mexico to take up arms against us and to draw Japan into a hostile alliance with her . . . they impudently denied us the use of the high seas and repeatedly executed their threat that they would send to their death any of our people who ventured to approach the coasts of Europe."

United States in the war

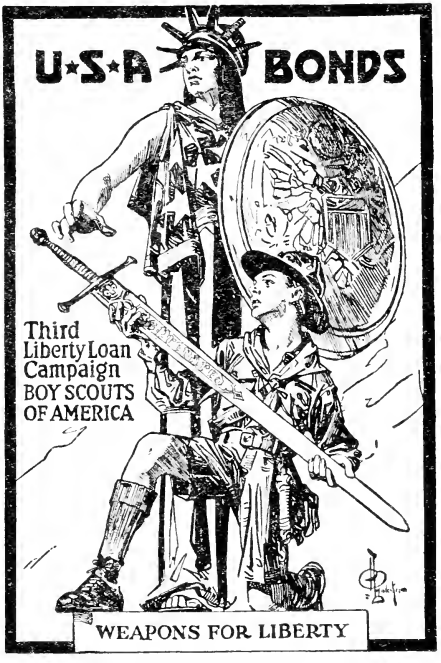
Indeed the sinking, without warning, of the *Lusitania*, in 1915, when more than a thousand people (in-

cluding 114 Americans) were lost, and of the *Sussex*, in 1916, when others were lost, showed quite plainly that Germany would not respect the laws of civilized people. Finally she went so far as to declare that she would deliberately sink all neutral ships found within a zone prescribed by her, except that one American ship a week might go to England if it followed certain rules which Germany laid down. Such an insult, followed by the actual sinking of American ships, compelled Congress, April 6, 1917, to declare that a state of war existed with Germany. Later in the year war was declared also against Austria-Hungary, which was "simply the vassal of the German government."

"For us there is but one choice. We have made it. Woe be to the man or group of men that seeks to stand in our way in this day of high resolution when every principle we hold dearest is to be vindicated and made secure for the salvation of the nations. We are ready to plead at the bar of history, and our flag shall wear a new luster. Once more we shall make good with our lives and fortunes the great faith to which we were born, and a new glory shall shine in the face of our people."

Every true American helped to make good these words of his President. Across the blue waters of the Atlantic, two millions of our soldiers, defying the submarines, were successfully convoyed to hasten the dawn of peace. At home, the windows of rich and poor displayed with pride the little red and white service flag with its

brave blue star — one, two, or more. Behind the first line of khaki-clad boys in France stood the second line of defense, — the home line. Here it was that every man, woman, and child played his part. Without this line the soldier would have been helpless, but because he knew he could count on it, he went dashing forward with a thrilling heroism and daring.



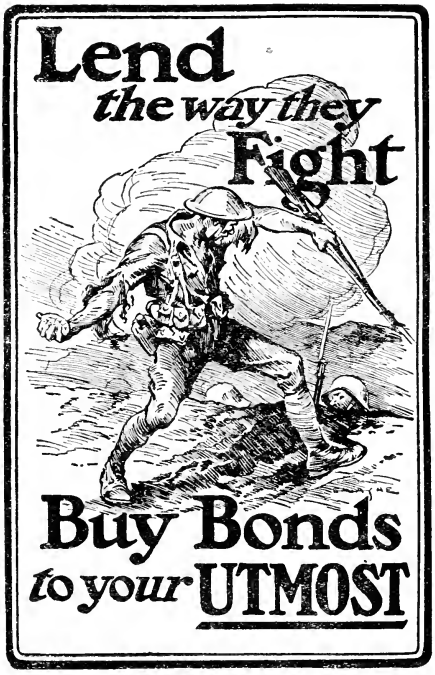
A Liberty Loan poster

It was not enough that Congress should provide for raising armies. It had to turn its attention, too, to the all-important matter of money. Wars are an immense drain on the wealth of a country. Huge sums must be spent, and raised.

Paying for the war

The first time the government asked its people to loan their money, in the First Liberty Loan, over four million patriots answered the call and offered far more than had been asked. The

second time it called for three billion dollars and over four and a half were raised. Within two years the people put five big loans "over the top."



A Liberty Loan poster

A government bond is the safest and best kind of investment. When you buy one you know that the whole country is back of the government's promise to pay you interest and to return your money when it is due. In order that the great privilege of helping the government might be shared by rich and poor, old and young, stamps, which are something like bonds, were sold — twenty-five-cent Thrift Stamps and five-dollar War Savings Stamps. These are for everybody. Even the little kindergarten boy would come to his teacher with his quarter grasped tightly in his little fist for his Thrift Stamp. He was learning early two valuable lessons, patriotism and the power to save.

Some organizations, like the Young Men's Christian Association, the Young Men's Hebrew Association, the Knights of Columbus, asked for money to be spent for the good of "the boys." Again the checks, the bills, and the coins came pouring in. These associations went with the soldiers overseas. In the strange cities they set up their tents or huts; and in the camps, on the boats, everywhere, they went. They furnished entertainment for the inactive evenings; they supplied paper, pen, and ink, and reminded the boys, "Don't forget to write home."

Another section of the second line of defense was devoted to the big problem of feeding our army, our allies, and ourselves. Again we thought of ourselves last. Mr. Hoover, the Food Administrator, told us from time to time just what we should have to save. At one time he would say "meat," then again "wheat," and then "sugar." The response of the people was quick and generous.

The food problem

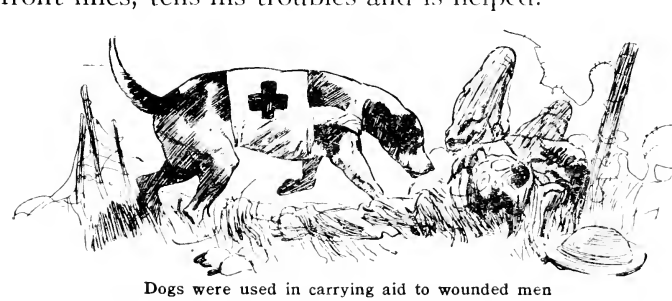
"War gardens" took the place of the green lawn spaces. We were up early weeding our plots and tending our crops. College girls and high-school boys, even the littlest children, helped Uncle Sam to feed his family and friends. Boy Scouts and Camp Fire Girls worked with a new zest because all was for "our country." Mothers studied industriously how they might save and yet serve wholesome and attractive food.

Never before in the history of the world have its women done so many things, particularly those things

that it was thought only men could do. They were out in the fields harvesting grain. They were in the factories making munitions. They were working on our street cars; they drove our ambulances; they ran our elevators; they worked as yeomen in the navy. Above all, the women labored for the Red Cross.

The Red Cross

The Red Cross organization, generously supported by the people, grew and expanded greatly during the war. Like an angel of mercy it spreads its wings over the earth. It reaches out with healing and help from the home lands to the stricken battle areas where nurses labor ceaselessly, where young ambulance drivers work night and day, where gaunt and tired surgeons never stop their saving labors. To the Red Cross the uniformed man, at camp, at home, or in the front lines, tells his troubles and is helped.



Dogs were used in carrying aid to wounded men

Shipping

There is no part in the great conflict of which we may be more proud than our great shipping achievements. We sent an army across the Atlantic, with munitions, equipment, and

A Liberty Loan poster

food. We built hundreds of ships and, protected by our own and England's navy, we defied Germany and her ruthless submarine warfare.

The World War developed many new phases of warfare. Perhaps the most outrageous was the use to which Germany put the submarine. An American invention, Germany perfected it and then used it, not only in lawful warfare against war ships, but in the ruthless sinking of unarmed merchantmen.

Trench warfare became a regular part of the fighting. To shelter the men from the direct fire of the enemy, long ditches were dug in the ground. These trenches were infested by rats and vermin. Water crept in and the pouring rains added to the misery. No wonder "the boys" awaited eagerly the coming of the Salvation Army lassie with her steaming cup of coffee, or, in sadder times, the Red Cross worker to care for the wounded.

In the trenches

Many airplanes, too, were for the first time used in warfare. Overhead, circle, swoop, dive, and dip the great birds of the blue, scout planes, bombing planes, battle planes, each with its special work to do. Some carry but one man, some as many as twelve. They do many kinds of work. They drop bombs upon enemy positions, they signal their own artillery where to fire, they spy out the enemy's land and plans, they take photographs, and they have great battles aloft whenever an enemy plane attempts to cross the lines.

Airplanes

As far away as is earth from sky, even so far away in beauty are the great tanks, from their winged brothers. But their service is none the less an important one. The tank is a huge motor-car, heavily armored, moving by caterpillar-drive, with its endless revolving belt which carries it crashing through fences and walls and over holes and ditches. It shoots as it travels, and cuts through barbed wire and all sorts of heavy defenses.

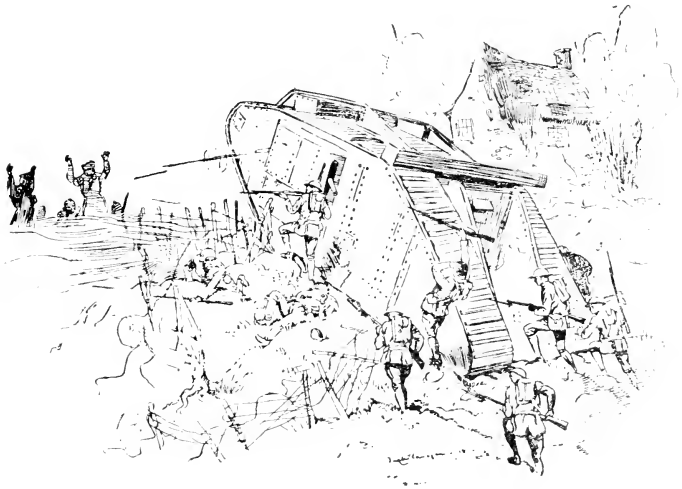
Tanks

Among the many ways in which Germany violated the rules of warfare was her use of poison gas as a weapon. It is one of the things that were strictly forbidden by treaties to which all the warring powers had agreed; but when Germany introduced it the Allies were compelled to use it in return. Before an attack great clouds of death-dealing vapor were spread over the lines. The gas caused much torturing pain and many deaths. Masks were soon made for protection and saved many lives.

Poison gas

About a year after the United States entered the war the allied forces were placed under the supreme command of General Foch. Under him the armies of the nations fought shoulder to shoulder. Americans under the command of

Winning the war



The tank shoots as it travels

General Pershing took their full part. In March, 1918, the Germans made their most extensive attack along the Western Front. At first it seemed as if they might overwhelm the soldiers of freedom, but once more they were held. Then followed counter-blows by Foch, the Americans taking their first important part at Chateau-Thierry and later forcing the Germans from the stronghold of St. Mihiel.

General Pershing, as shown in a W.S.S. poster

Then the gray hosts were pushed steadily, hourly, daily, back, back, back across the lands they had laid waste; back to their own land where they must learn the first lesson of a true democracy — no person may live in this world and think first of himself and his wishes; each man must think of his neighbor and of the good of all as well as of himself.

Bulgaria was the first of the Central Powers to crumple. In September, 1918, she begged for a truce and ended by laying down her arms. Turkey and Austria-Hungary followed soon afterward, and finally Germany herself gave up the fight at the eleventh hour on the eleventh day of the eleventh month, 1918.

In this war things unthought of, things undreamed of, suddenly appeared from the deep, dark recesses of evil. But shining brightly against this black background stand Sacrifice and Heroism — soldiers who carry their stricken officers off the battlefields, officers who rush out to bring back wounded men, trench mates who, though parched with thirst, give their last drop of water with a smile and a "Take it, pal, I don't want it."

Sacrifice and heroism

There stands plucky little Serbia who fought to the utmost for her home; and dauntless Belgium with her ravaged country and her crown of honor. Side by side are France and England, long enemies, now comrades. With England, the Mother Country, — the past wiped out, — and with her brothers of France and Italy, stands America, who has poured out her treasure — her youth, her gold, her love, fighting to keep her country the land of the free, and to bring that blessed freedom to others, fighting for the flag we love.

O Flag, with the old, old glory,
  We thrill as you float above;
We read anew in your field of blue
  The message of brother-love.

With love in our hearts we bade you
Fare forth on the periled sea
To stricken lands and the valiant bands
Defending their liberty.

Your folds are the shrouds of heroes,
Your staff is the strength of men,
Your gleaming stars and your streaming bars
Sing "Freedom shall reign again."

FOR CAREFUL STUDY

July, 1914, was made eventful by the outbreak of a war which spread until it involved almost every nation in the world. For this reason it goes into history as the "World War."

The war was started by Germany. Austria-Hungary, it is true, was the first nation to declare war, but she was under the mastery of Germany. She made an unfair attack upon Serbia. Russia came to the aid of Serbia, and Germany used this as an excuse for declaring war upon Russia and upon Russia's ally, France. Germany, in order to strike at France, broke her pledge to Belgium and other nations, and invaded Belgium. Upon this England entered the war against Germany. Turkey and Bulgaria joined the Central Powers, and soon practically all the powerful nations were arrayed against them.

The United States entered the war April 6, 1917, because Germany had been inhumane in her warfare and had attacked American shipping and killed American citizens.

At first Germany seemed to be having some success in her wild ambition to conquer the world. Her armies overran Belgium, invaded France, and came within a few miles of Paris, but were held back. In the meanwhile the British navy had practically cleared the seas of German shipping and blockaded German seaports. In desperation Germany began to make wholesale illegal use of her submarines.

The United States, in spite of German submarines, successfully sent across the ocean two million soldiers who joined the Allies.

With this increased strength against her, Germany, the last of the Central Powers to give up, signed an armistice November 11, 1918.

FACT TO BE MEMORIZED

Our war with Germany, 1917–1918, was caused by cruel, unlawful, and aggressive acts of the German government.

APPENDIX A

FACTS TO BE MEMORIZED

Discovery and Exploration

Columbus discovered America in 1492 and established Spanish claim to territory.

Cabot discovered the mainland of North America in 1497 and established English claim to territory.

America was named for Americus Vespucius.

Balboa discovered the Pacific Ocean in 1513.

Magellan's men were the first to sail around the earth, 1519–1522.

De Soto discovered the Mississippi River in 1541.

Cartier's discovery of the St. Lawrence and La Salle's exploration of the Mississippi established French claim to territory.

Hudson explored the Hudson River in 1609 and established Dutch claim to territory.

Settlement

Raleigh made two attempts to found a colony in Virginia, which, though unsuccessful, turned the thought of the English toward the New World.

The first permanent English colony was founded at Jamestown, Virginia, in 1607.

Negro slavery was introduced into Virginia in 1619.

Massachusetts was settled by the Pilgrims at Plymouth, 1620, and by other Puritans at Boston, 1630.

Maryland was settled by Lord Baltimore and other Catholics.

New Netherland was settled by the Dutch in 1623, at New Amsterdam and elsewhere; but it was taken by the English in 1664.

Pennsylvania was settled by Quakers under William Penn, who founded Philadelphia, 1682.

Colonial Wars

Three colonial wars were waged between the French and the English because of wars in Europe.

A fourth colonial war, the French and Indian, 1754–1763, began in a contest for the Ohio valley, and resulted in English supremacy in North America.

The Revolutionary War

The Revolutionary War, 1775–1783, was caused by England's treatment of her colonies as to taxation and trade laws.

The Declaration of Independence was adopted at Philadelphia, July 4, 1776.

The capture of Burgoyne's army, 1777, prevented the English from dividing the colonies in two along the Hudson, and secured French aid for the Americans.

The surrender of Cornwallis to Washington, at Yorktown, 1781, practically ended the Revolutionary War.

By the Treaty of Paris, 1783, at the close of the Revolutionary War, England recognized American independence, and the boundary lines of the United States were agreed upon.

Growth of the Union

The many weaknesses of the Articles of Confederation, under which the Union had been governed, led to the adoption of the Constitution in 1788.

George Washington was inaugurated first President of the United States in 1789.

Our national capitals have been New York, Philadelphia, Washington.

The Louisiana Territory was purchased from France in 1803, and afterwards explored by Lewis and Clark.

The Second War with England, 1812–1815, secured independence for American commerce and gained the respect of European nations for the United States.

Florida was purchased from Spain in 1819.

By the Missouri Compromise, 1820, Missouri was admitted

as a slave state, while slavery was prohibited in all the rest of the Louisiana Territory north of 36° 30′.

The Erie Canal was completed in 1825.

The first American railroad was begun in 1828.

The Mexican War, 1846–1848, was caused by the annexation of Texas and a dispute over its southern boundary.

The Mexican War, in which the Americans won every battle, resulted in fixing the boundary at the Rio Grande, and in the purchase from Mexico of California and other territory.

Gold was discovered in California in 1848.

By the Compromise of 1850, California was admitted into the Union as a free state, and Utah and New Mexico were allowed to decide for themselves whether they would be free or slave.

The Kansas-Nebraska Law, 1854, repealed the Missouri Compromise and allowed the territories to decide the slave question for themselves.

The Dred Scott Decision, 1857, permitted slavery in all the territories.

The Civil War

The Civil War, 1861–1865, was caused by slavery, and more directly by the secession of the southern states.

In the Civil War the plan of the North was to blockade southern ports and thus cut off supplies from the Confederacy; to open up the Mississippi and thus divide the Confederacy; and to capture Richmond, the seat of the Confederate government.

The *Monitor-Merrimac* engagement, 1862, prevented the Confederates from breaking up the blockade of the southern ports.

By Lincoln's Emancipation Proclamation, January 1, 1863, the slaves in the seceding states were declared free.

The attempt of the Confederates to invade the North was ended by the battle of Gettysburg, July 1–3, 1863.

The Confederacy was divided along the Mississippi by the capture of Vicksburg, July 4, 1863.

Lee abandoned Richmond and surrendered to Grant in April, 1865.

The Civil War resulted in the abolition of slavery and the reunion of the states.

Renewed Expansion

Alaska was purchased from Russia in 1867.

The War with Spain, 1898, was caused by cruel treatment of the Cubans by the Spaniards.

During the Spanish War, Manila and Santiago were taken, and at the close Cuba was freed, Porto Rico was ceded to the United States, and the Philippines were bought from Spain.

Our War with Germany, 1917–1918, was caused by cruel, unlawful, and aggressive acts of the German government.

APPENDIX B

REFERENCE TABLE OF THE STATES

No.	State	Derivation of name	Date	
1	Delaware	Lord Delaware	1787	Adopted the Constitution
2	Pennsylvania	Penn's Woodland	1787	
3	New Jersey	Island of Jersey, in English Channel	1787	
4	Georgia	King George II	1788	
5	Connecticut	Connecticut River (long tidal river)	1788	
6	Massachusetts	"At the great hill" — Indian	1788	
7	Maryland	Maria, queen of Charles I	1788	
8	South Carolina	King Charles II	1788	
9	New Hampshire	Hampshire, in England	1788	
10	Virginia	Virgin Queen (Elizabeth)	1788	
11	New York	Duke of York	1788	
12	North Carolina	King Charles II	1789	
13	Rhode Island	Isle of Rhodes, in Ægean Sea	1790	
14	Vermont	"Green mountain" — French	1791	Admitted into the Union
15	Kentucky	"Meadow land" — Indian	1792	
16	Tennessee	"River with the great bend" — Indian	1796	
17	Ohio	"Beautiful river" — Indian	1803	
18	Louisiana	Louis XIV, of France	1812	
19	Indiana	Purchased from Indians	1816	
20	Mississippi	"Great Water" or "Father of Waters" — Indian	1817	
21	Illinois	"Superior men" — Indian	1818	
22	Alabama	"Here we rest" — Indian	1819	
23	Maine	The main land, or, from a province of France	1820	
24	Missouri	"Muddy water" — Indian	1821	
25	Arkansas	Indian tribe	1836	
26	Michigan	"Great water" — Indian	1837	
27	Florida	"The flowery land" — Spanish	1845	
28	Texas	Indian tribe	1845	
29	Iowa	"Sleepy ones" — Indian tribe	1846	
30	Wisconsin	"Wild rushing river" — Indian	1848	
31	California	Name in an old Spanish romance	1850	
32	Minnesota	"Cloudy water" — Indian	1858	
33	Oregon	"Wild sage" — Spanish	1859	
34	Kansas	"Smoky water" — Indian	1861	
35	West Virginia	Virginia	1863	
36	Nevada	"Snow-clad" — Spanish	1864	
37	Nebraska	"Shallow or broad water" — Indian	1867	
38	Colorado	"Blood red" — Spanish	1876	
39	North Dakota	Dakota confederation of Indian tribes — "Allies"	1889	
40	South Dakota		1889	
41	Montana	"Mountainous region" — Spanish	1889	
42	Washington	George Washington	1889	
43	Idaho	"Gem of the mountains" — Indian	1890	
44	Wyoming	"Large plains" — Indian	1890	
45	Utah	"Mountain dweller" — Indian	1896	
46	Oklahoma	"Red people" — Indian	1907	
47	New Mexico	Mexico (Mexitl) — Aztec	1912	
48	Arizona	"Silver Bearing" — Aztec	1912	

APPENDIX C

REFERENCE TABLE OF PRESIDENTS AND VICE PRESIDENTS

No.	President	State	Born	Died	Term of office	Elected by	Vice President	State
1	George Washington	Va.	1732	1799	Two terms; 1789–1797	Whole people	John Adams	Mass.
2	John Adams	Mass.	1735	1826	One term; 1797–1801	Federalists	Thomas Jefferson	Va.
3	Thomas Jefferson	Va.	1743	1826	Two terms; 1801–1809	House of Rep. Republicans	Aaron Burr George Clinton	N. Y. N. Y.
4	James Madison	Va.	1751	1836	Two terms; 1809–1817	Republicans	George Clinton Elbridge Gerry	N. Y. Mass.
5	James Monroe	Va.	1758	1831	Two terms; 1817–1825	Republicans	Daniel D. Tompkins	N. Y.
6	John Quincy Adams	Mass.	1767	1848	One term; 1825–1829	House of Rep.	John C. Calhoun	S. C.
7	Andrew Jackson	Tenn.	1767	1845	Two terms; 1829–1837	Democrats	John C. Calhoun Martin Van Buren	S. C. N. Y.
8	Martin Van Buren	N. Y.	1782	1862	One term; 1837–1841	Democrats	Richard M. Johnson	Ky.
9	William H. Harrison	Ohio	1773	1841	One month; 1841	Whigs	John Tyler	Va.
10	John Tyler	Va.	1790	1862	3 yrs. and 11 mos.; 1841–1845	Whigs.		
11	James K. Polk	Tenn.	1795	1849	One term; 1845–1849	Democrats	George M. Dallas	Pa.
12	Zachary Taylor	La.	1784	1850	1 yr. and 4 mos.; 1849–1850	Whigs	Millard Fillmore	N. Y.
13	Millard Fillmore	N. Y.	1800	1874	2 yrs. and 8 mos.; 1850–1853	Whigs.		
14	Franklin Pierce	N. H.	1804	1869	One term; 1853–1857	Democrats	William R. King	Ala.
15	James Buchanan	Pa.	1791	1868	One term; 1857–1861	Democrats	John C. Breckinridge	Ky.
16	Abraham Lincoln	Ill.	1809	1865	1 term and 1 mo.; 1861–1865.	Republicans	Hannibal Hamlin Andrew Johnson	Maine. Tenn.
17	Andrew Johnson	Tenn.	1808	1875	3 yrs. and 11 mos.; 1865–1869	Republicans.		
18	Ulysses S. Grant	Ill.	1822	1885	Two terms; 1869–1877	Republicans	Schuyler Colfax Henry Wilson	Ind. Mass.
19	Rutherford B. Hayes	Ohio	1822	1893	One term; 1877–1881	Republicans	William A. Wheeler	N. Y.
20	James A. Garfield	Ohio	1831	1881	6 months and 15 days; 1881	Republicans	Chester A. Arthur	N. Y.
21	Chester A. Arthur	N. Y.	1830	1886	3 yrs. 5 mos. 15 das.; 1881–85.	Republicans.		
22	Grover Cleveland	N. Y.	1837	1908	First term; 1885–1889	Democrats	Thomas A. Hendricks	Ind.
23	Benjamin Harrison	Ind.	1833	1901	One term; 1889–1893	Republicans	Levi P. Morton	N. Y.
24	Grover Cleveland	N. Y.	1837	1908	Second term; 1893–1897	Democrats	Adlai E. Stevenson	Ill.
25	William McKinley	Ohio	1843	1901	1 term and 6 mos.; 1897–1901	Republicans	Garret A. Hobart Theodore Roosevelt	N. J. N. Y.
26	Theodore Roosevelt	N. Y.	1858	1919	1 term and 3½ yrs.; 1901–09	Republicans	Charles W. Fairbanks	Ind.
27	William H. Taft	Ohio	1857	.....	1 term; 1909–1913	Republicans	James S. Sherman	N. Y.
28	Woodrow Wilson	N. J.	1856	.....	1913–	Democrats	Thomas R. Marshall	Ind.

APPENDIX D

REFERENCE LIST OF IMPORTANT EVENTS, IN CHRONOLOGICAL ORDER

1783.....September 3, Treaty of Peace signed at Paris.
1783.....November 25, British evacuated New York.
1786.....Shays's unsuccessful rebellion in Massachusetts.
1787.....Northwest Ordinance.
1788.....First settlement in Northwest Territory at Marietta, Ohio.
1788.....Constitution adopted, nine states having ratified.
1789.....Washington inaugurated.
1790.....Philadelphia made the capital.
1798.....Alien and Sedition Laws passed.
1799.....Washington died, at Mt. Vernon.
1800.....Washington became the capital.
1801–1805..War with the Barbary States.
1803.....Louisiana Territory purchased.
1804–1806..Lewis and Clark expedition.
1807.....Fulton's *Clermont* made its first trip.
1807.....English *Leopard* fired on American *Chesapeake.*
1808.....Importation of slaves stopped.
1809.....Abraham Lincoln born.
1811.....General Harrison defeated the Indians at Tippecanoe, Ind.
1812–1815..Second War with England.
1812..... June 18, war declared.
1812..... August 16, Hull surrendered Detroit to the English.
1812..... August 19, *Constitution* defeated the *Guerrière.*
1812..... October 13, Americans defeated at Queenstown, Canada.
1813..... September 10, Americans under Perry defeated British fleet on Lake Erie.
1813..... October 5, British defeated at Battle of the Thames.
1814..... July 25, British repulsed at Lundy's Lane.
1814..... August 24, British captured Washington.

1814..... September 11, Americans under McDonough defeated British fleet on Lake Champlain.
1814..... December 24, Treaty of Peace signed at Ghent.
1815..... January 8, British defeated at Battle of New Orleans.
1818.....Seminoles defeated.
1819.....Florida purchased.
1820.....Missouri Compromise.
1823.....Monroe Doctrine declared.
1825.....Erie Canal opened.
1828.....First railroad begun.
1832.....South Carolina declared nullification.
1837.....Morse patented telegraph.
1846.....Howe patented sewing machine.
1846–1848..Mexican War.
1847..... February 23, Mexicans defeated at Buena Vista.
1847..... March 29, Americans captured Vera Cruz.
1847..... September 14, Americans captured Mexico city.
1848.....Gold discovered in California.
1854.....Kansas-Nebraska law.
1854.....Japan made her first foreign treaty with the United States.
1857.....Dred Scott decision.
1858.....First Atlantic cable laid.
1858.....Lincoln-Douglas debates.
1859.....John Brown raided Harpers Ferry.
1860.....December 20, South Carolina seceded.
1861.....February 4, Confederate Government organized.
1861.....March 4, Lincoln inaugurated.
1861–1865..Civil War.
1861..... April 14, Fort Sumter taken by Confederates.
1861..... July 21, Battle of Bull Run.
1861..... November 8, Mason and Slidell captured.
1862..... February 16, Fort Donelson surrendered to Federals.
1862..... March 9, *Monitor-Merrimac* engagement.
1862..... April 6–7, Battle of Shiloh.
1862..... April 16, Slavery abolished in District of Columbia.
1862..... April 25, New Orleans captured by Farragut.
1862..... June 25–July 1, Seven Days' Battles.
1862..... August 29–30, Second Battle of Bull Run.
1862..... September 17, Battle of Antietam.
1862..... December 13, Battle of Fredericksburg.

1863..... January 1, Emancipation Proclamation.
1863..... May 2, Battle of Chancellorsville.
1863..... July 1–3, Battle of Gettysburg.
1863..... July 4, Vicksburg surrendered.
1863..... September 19–20, Battle of Chickamauga.
1863..... November 19, Gettysburg battlefield dedicated.
1863..... November 24–25, Battle of Chattanooga.
1864..... May 5, 6, Battle of the Wilderness.
1864..... June 19, *Alabama* sunk by *Kearsarge*.
1864..... August 5, Battle of Mobile Bay.
1864..... September 2, Atlanta captured.
1864..... October 19, Battle of Cedar Creek.
1864..... November 15, Sherman began his march to the sea.
1864..... December 15, 16, Battle of Nashville.
1865..... April 1, Battle of Five Forks.
1865..... April 3, Richmond evacuated.
1865..... April 9, Lee surrendered at Appomattox Court House.
1865..... April 14, Lincoln assassinated.
1865.....Thirteenth Amendment ratified.
1868.....President Johnson impeached by the House; but was not convicted.
1868.....Fourteenth Amendment ratified.
1869.....First transcontinental railroad.
1870.....Fifteenth Amendment ratified.
1871.....Chicago fire.
1876.....Centennial Exhibition, at Philadelphia.
1876.....Telephone invented.
1876.....Custer's army destroyed by Indians.
1878.....Electric light perfected.
1881.....Garfield assassinated.
1883.....Letter postage reduced from 3 cents to 2 cents.
1886.....Statue of Liberty unveiled, New York.
1898.....February 15, *Maine* destroyed in Havana Harbor.
1898.....War with Spain.
1898..... April 25, Congress declared war.
1898..... May 1, Battle of Manila.
1898..... July 1–3, Battle of San Juan.
1898..... July 3, Battle of Santiago.
1898..... December 10, Treaty with Spain signed at Paris.
1898.....Hawaii annexed.

1899.....First Peace Conference met at Hague.
1900.....Galveston disaster.
1901.....President McKinley assassinated.
1902.....Anthracite strike in Pennsylvania.
1903.....Pacific cable completed.
1903.....Alaska boundary settled.
1903.....Republic of Panama recognized by the United States.
1904.....Baltimore fire.
1906.....San Francisco earthquake.
1908.....Aëroplane flight at Fort Myer.
1914.....Panama Canal completed.
1917.....April 6, War with Germany.
1918.....November 11, signing of the armistice.

APPENDIX E

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES

We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this constitution for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I

SECTION I

All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a congress of the United States, which shall consist of a senate and house of representatives.

SECTION II

1. The house of representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several states, and the electors in each state shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the state legislature.

2. No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state in which he shall be chosen.

3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several states which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every

thirty thousand, but each state shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the state of *New Hampshire* shall be entitled to choose three, *Massachusetts* eight, *Rhode Island and Providence Plantations* one, *Connecticut* five, *New York* six, *New Jersey* four, *Pennsylvania* eight, *Delaware* one, *Maryland* six, *Virginia* ten, *North Carolina* five, *South Carolina* five, and *Georgia* three.

4. When vacancies happen in the representation from any state, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

5. The house of representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers, and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECTION III

1. The senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each state, [chosen by the legislature thereof,][1] for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.

2. Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year; of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one third may be chosen every second year; [and if vacancies happen by resignation or otherwise during the recess of the legislature of any state, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.][1]

3. No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state for which he shall be chosen.

4. The vice president of the United States shall be president of the senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

5. The senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president *pro tempore* in the absence of the vice president, or when he shall exercise the office of president of the United States.

6. The senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments.

[1] Superseded by seventeenth amendment.

When sitting for that purpose they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the president of the United States is tried, the chief justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two thirds of the members present.

7. Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall, nevertheless, be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SECTION IV

1. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives shall be prescribed in each state by the legislature thereof; but the congress may at any time by law make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

2. The congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECTION V

1. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner and under such penalties, as each house may provide.

2. Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and with the concurrence of two thirds, expel a member.

3. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question shall, at the desire of one fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

4. Neither house, during the session of congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

SECTION VI

1. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

2. No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

SECTION VII

1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the house of representatives; but the senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

2. Every bill which shall have passed the house of representatives and the senate, shall, before it becomes a law, be presented to the president of the United States; if he approve, he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration two thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the president within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

3. Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the senate and house of representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the president of the United

States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the senate and house of representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION VIII

The congress shall have power

1. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several states, and with the Indian tribes;

4. To establish an uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States;

5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;

6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

7. To establish post offices and post roads;

8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;

9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the supreme court;

10. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offenses against the law of nations;

11. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

12. To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

13. To provide and maintain a navy;

14. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;

15. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions;

16. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service

of the United States, reserving to the states respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by congress;

17. To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular states, and the acceptance of congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the state in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards, and other needful buildings; and

18. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECTION IX

1. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the states now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

2. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

3. No bill of attainder or ex post facto law shall be passed.

4. No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any state.

6. No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one state over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to or from one state, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

7. No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

8. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them shall, without

the consent of the congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SECTION X

1. No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

2. No state shall, without the consent of congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any state on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the congress.

3. No state shall, without the consent of congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another state, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II

SECTION I

1. The executive power shall be vested in a president of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the vice president, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

2. Each state shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the state may be entitled in the congress; but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

[3. The electors shall meet in their respective states and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign

and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of government of the United States, directed to the president of the senate. The president of the senate shall, in the presence of the senate and house of representatives, open all the certificates; and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the house of representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for president; and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list the said house shall in like manner choose the president. But in choosing the president the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the president, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the vice president. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the senate shall choose from them by ballot the vice president.][1]

4. The congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes, which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

5. No person except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this constitution, shall be eligible to the office of president; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

6. In case of the removal of the president from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the vice president, and the congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the president and vice president, declaring what officer shall then act as president, and such officer shall act accordingly until the disability be removed or the president shall be elected.

7. The president shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during

[1] Superseded by Twelfth Amendment.

the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

8. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:—

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of president of the United States, and will to the best of my ability preserve, protect, and defend the constitution of the United States."

SECTION II

1. The president shall be commander in chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several states, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offenses against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

2. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the senate, to make treaties, provided two thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the supreme court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper, in the president alone, in the courts of law or in the heads of departments.

3. The president shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECTION III

He shall from time to time give to the congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall

receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION IV

The president, vice president, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

ARTICLE III

SECTION I

The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one supreme court, and in such inferior courts as the congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECTION II

1. The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more states; between a state and citizens of another state; between citizens of different states; between citizens of the same state claiming lands under grants of different states, and between a state, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens or subjects.

2. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a state shall be a party, the supreme court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the supreme court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the congress shall make.

3. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be

by jury; and such trial shall be held in the state where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any state, the trial shall be at such place or places as the congress may by law have directed.

SECTION III

1. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

2. The congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood or forfeiture except during the life of the person attainted.

ARTICLE IV

SECTION I

Full faith and credit shall be given in each state to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other state. And the congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECTION II

1. The citizens of each state shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several states.

2. A person charged in any state with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another state, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the state from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the state having jurisdiction of the crime.

3. No person held to service or labor in one state, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SECTION III

1. New states may be admitted by the congress into this Union;

but no new state shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other state; nor any state be formed by the junction of two or more states or parts of states, without the consent of the legislatures of the states concerned as well as of the congress.

2. The congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States or of any particular state.

SECTION IV

The United States shall guarantee to every state in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion, and on application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened), against domestic violence.

ARTICLE V

The congress, whenever two thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two thirds of the several states, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three fourths of the several states, or by conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the congress; provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no state, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the senate.

ARTICLE VI

1. All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this constitution as under the confederation.

2. This constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be

made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every state shall be bound thereby, anything in the constitution or laws of any state to the contrary notwithstanding.

3. The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several state legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several states, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

ARTICLE VII

The ratification of the conventions of nine states shall be sufficient for the establishment of this constitution between the states so ratifying the same.

Done in convention by the unanimous consent of the states present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth. In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.

AMENDMENTS

ARTICLE I

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

ARTICLE II

A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE III

No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE IV

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

ARTICLE V

No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offense to be twice put in jeopardy of

life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

ARTICLE VI

In all criminal prosecutions the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the state and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense.

ARTICLE VII

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

ARTICLE VIII

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

ARTICLE IX

The enumeration in the constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

ARTICLE X

The powers not delegated to the United States by the constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively or to the people.

ARTICLE XI

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against

one of the United States by citizens of another state, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

ARTICLE XII

The electors shall meet in their respective states and vote by ballot for president and vice president, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as president, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as vice president and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as president, and of all persons voted for as vice president, and of the number of votes for each; which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the senate. The president of the senate shall, in the presence of the senate and house of representatives, open all the certificates and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes for president, shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as president, the house of representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the president. But in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the house of representatives shall not choose a president whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the vice president shall act as president, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the president.

The person having the greatest number of votes as vice president, shall be the vice president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list the senate shall choose the vice president; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of president shall be eligible to that of vice president of the United States.

ARTICLE XIII

SECTION 1. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SEC. 2. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

ARTICLE XIV

SECTION 1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the state wherein they reside. No state shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any state deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SEC. 2. Representatives shall be apportioned among the several states according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each state, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for president and vice president of the United States, representatives in congress, the executive and judicial officers of a state, or the members of the legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such state, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion, or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such state.

SEC. 3. No person shall be a senator or representative in congress, or elector of president and vice president, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any state, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any state legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any state, to support the constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But congress may, by a vote of two thirds of each house, remove such disability.

SEC. 4. The validity of the public debt of the United States,

authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any state shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

SEC. 5. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

ARTICLE XV

SECTION 1. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any state on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SEC. 2. The congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

ARTICLE XVI

The congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes on incomes, from whatever source derived, without apportionment among the several states, and without regard to any census or enumeration.

ARTICLE XVII

The senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each state, elected by the people thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote. The electors in each state shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the state legislatures.

When vacancies happen in the representation of any state in the senate, the executive authority of such state shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies: *Provided*, That the legislature of any state may empower the executive thereof to make temporary appointments until the people fill the vacancies by election as the legislature may direct.

This amendment shall not be so construed as to affect the election or term of any senator chosen before it becomes valid as part of the constitution.

ARTICLE XVIII

SECTION 1. After one year from the ratification of this article the manufacture, sale, or transportation of intoxicating liquors within, the importation thereof into, or the exportation thereof from the United States and all territory subject to the jurisdiction thereof for beverage purposes is hereby prohibited.

SEC. 2. The congress and the several states shall have concurrent power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

SEC. 3. This article shall be inoperative unless it shall have been ratified as an amendment to the constitution by the legislatures of the several states, as provided in the constitution, within seven years from the date of the submission hereof to the states by the congress.

INDEX

Abolitionists, 102.
  in the North, 93.
  in the South, 96.
Adams, John (1735–1826), 13, 20.
Adams, John Quincy (1767–1848), 67.
A'ër-o-plane, picture, 233.
Agriculture, Department of, 190.
Aguinaldo (ah-gēe-nahl'do), 225.
Alabama, admitted, 91.
Alabama claims, 174.
Alaska, 193.
Allegheny Mountains, crossing the, 178.
Amendments, 13th, 14th, 15th, 169.
American Federation of Labor, 232.
American soldier, picture, 214.
Anderson, Robert (1805–1871), 117, 156.
An-tie'tam (-tee'), battle of, 131.
Ap-po-mat'tox Court House, 155.
Arbitration, with England, 174.
  between England and Venezuela, 250.
Arizona, admitted, 234.
Ar'kan-sas (-saw), admitted, 92.
Army, disbanding northern, 171.
  feeding an, 150.
Arthur, Chester A. (1830–1886), 199.
Articles of Confederation, 6.
Atlantic Cable, 194.
Aviation, 233.

Balance of States, 89, 91, 93.
Baltimore, and first railroad, 57.
  attacked, 46.
  fire, 234.
  newspaper in, 59.
Bar'ba-ry States, 31.
Beau're-gard (bo'), General (1818–1893), 127.
Bell, Alexander G. (1847–), 262.
Blockade of southern ports, 123.
Blockade runner, picture, 124.
Blockhouse, Spanish, picture, 216.
Boone, Daniel (1735–1820), 179.
Border States, 122.
Boston, fire in, 196.
  newspaper in, 59.
Boul'der (bōl'), founded, 191.
Boxers' uprising, 226.
Braddock, General, 2.
Branding iron, picture, 29.
Brooms, introduced, 61.
Brown, John (1800–1859), 103.
Bu-chan'an (-kan'), James (1791–1868), 105, 109.
Bue'na Vis'ta (bū'), battle of, 71.
Buffalo, and Erie Canal, 54.
  exposition, 270.
Buffalo, herd of, picture, 188.
Bull Run, first battle, 127.
  second battle, 131.
Burns, Anthony, 100.
Butler, General (1818–1893), 134.

Cal-houn' (-hoon'), John C. (1782–1850), 37, 98.
California, admitted, 92, 187.
  gold in, 186.
Canada, in Civil War, 141.
  in War of 1812, 37.
Canal, Erie, 53.
  Panama, 228.
Capital, national, 15.
Carpetbaggers, 170.
Carpets, in America, 61.
Carroll, Charles (1737–1832), 57.
Carson, Christopher (1809–1868), 182.
Cattle ranches, 255.
Cemetery Ridge, battle of, 147.
Census, first, 15.

Cervera (thĕr-vā'rah), Admiral, 211, 217.
Chan'cel-lors-ville, battle of, 135.
Charleston, earthquake, 197.
Chat-ta-noo'ga, battle of, 149.
Chesapeake, 33, 43.
Chicago, exposition, 265.
  fire, 196.
  founded, 64.
Chick-a-mau'ga, battle of, 149.
China, open door in, 226.
Cities, life in, 240–247.
Civil Service reform, 199.
Civil War, 115–158.
Clark, William (1770–1838), 29.
Clay, Henry (1777–1852), 37, 92, 97.
Cler'mont, 52.
Cleveland, Grover (1837–1908), 200, 266.
Clinton, De Witt (1769–1828), 53.
Coal, found in Pennsylvania, 58.
Coal miners, 251.
Coal strike, 232.
Colorado, admitted, 191.
Columbia River, discovered, 30.
Commerce, Department of, 232.
Compromise, of 1850, 92.
  Missouri, 92, 102.
Confederate money, 144.
Confederate soldier, picture, 142.
Confederate States, and England, 122.
  enumerated, 120.
  formed, 109.
  "white house," picture, 121.
Confederation, Articles of, 6.
Constitution, framed, 11, 12.
  ratified, 12.
  slavery in, 85, 89.
Constitution, 38, 39.
Convention, Federal, 1787, 7.
Cooper, Peter (1791–1883), 57.
Copperheads, 140.
Cotton, in Civil War, 116, 143.
  slaves picking, picture, 81.
Cotton gin, 85.
Cotton mill, picture, 62.
Cris'pin, 62.
Critical period, 4.
Cuba, and Spain, 205.
  republic, 220.
Culebra (coo-lā'brah) Cut, picture, 229.
Cumberland, destroyed, 125.
Cumberland Road, 56.
Custer, George A. (1839–1876), 192.

Debt, national, 16, 173.
Decatur, Stephen (1779–1820), 32, 41.
Declaration of Independence, read, 260.
Democratic party, 68.
Democratic-Republican party, 25.
Department, of Agriculture, 192.
  Commerce, 232.
  Labor, 232.
Desert, Great American, 182.
Detroit, in War of 1812, 37, 45.
Dew'ey, George (1837–), 207.
  medal, picture, 210.
District of Columbia, founded, 16.
Doug'las (dug'), Stephen A. (1813–1861), 105.
Draft riots, 141.
Drake, quoted, 235.
Dred Scott decision, 103.

Eads (eedz), James B. (1820–1887), 189.
Early, Jubal A. (1816–1894), 154.
Earthquake, Charleston, 197.
  San Francisco, 234.
Ed'i-son, Thomas A. (1847–), 233.
El Ca'ney (kah'nā), taken, 214.
El'li-cott Mills, railroad, 57.
Emancipation, 95.
  Proclamation, 135.
Em-bar'go Act, 36.
England, and Confederacy, 122.
  and slavery, 78.
  and Spanish-American War, 207.
  seizes American ships, 34.
Era of Good Feeling, 51.
Ericsson (ĕr'ik-son), John (1803–1889), 126.
Erie Canal, 53.
Exposition, Centennial, 259.
  Columbian, 265.
  Louisiana Purchase, 273.
  Pan-American, 270.
  San Francisco, and others, 277.

Fair Oaks, battle of, 128.
Far'ra-gut (făr'), David G. (1801–1870), 133, 152.

Federal convention, 1787, 7.
Federal Hall, N. Y., 14.
Federalists, 19, 25.
Field, Cyrus W. (1819–1892), 194.
Fire, Baltimore, 234.
  Boston, 196.
  Chicago, 196.
Flag, Perry's, 44.
  salute to, 223.
Flatboat, picture, 179.
Flood, Johnstown, 198.
Florida, admitted, 92.
  purchased, 64.
Foote, Andrew H. (1806–1863), 134.
Ford's Theater, picture, 160.
Fort Dearborn, 64.
Fort Donelson, 134.
Fort Henry, 134.
Fort McHenry, 46.
Fort Myer, 233.
Fort Sumter, 117.
France, acquires Louisiana Territory, 27.
  and Mexico, 173.
  and Statue of Liberty, 266.
  seizes American ships, 34.
  trouble with, 20.
Franklin, Benjamin (1706–1790), in Federal convention, 8.
  printing press, picture, 264.
  statue, picture, 8.
Fraunces' Tavern, 2.
  picture, 3.
Fred'ericksburg, battle of, 131.
Freedmen's Bureau, 168.
Fré-mont', John C. (1813–1890), 105, 183.
Fugitive slave law, 90, 98.
Fulton, Robert (1765–1815), 51.

Gads'den Purchase, 72.
Galveston hurricane, 234.
Garfield, James A. (1831–1881), 199.
Gar'ri-son (găr'), William L. (1804–1879), 93.
Gatun (gah'toon) Dam, 229.
Geneva Court (jĕ-nee'va), 175.
Georgia, and Indians, 65.
  slavery in, 83, 85.
Gettysburg, battle of, 147.
Gibbons, Cardinal, quoted, 274.
Gilder, Richard W., quoted, 271.
Gin (jin), cotton, 85.
Goethals (gŭh'talz), George W. (1858–), 230.
Gold, in Alaska, 193.
  California, 186.
  Pikes Peak, 192.
Grant, Ulysses S. (1822–1885), at Fort Donelson, 134.
  at Vicksburg, 148.
  lieutenant general, 150.
  on Lee's surrender, 156.
  President, 199.
Gray, Robert (1755–1806), 30.
Great American Desert, 182.
Greeley, Horace (1811–1872), 109.
Guam (gwahm), acquired, 220.
Guerrière (gär-ryâr'), 39.

Hague Court (hāg), 227.
"Hail Columbia," written, 21.
Halleck, Henry W. (1815–1872), 134, 166.
Hamilton, Alexander (1757–1804), 9, 16.
Harpers Ferry, 103.
Harris, J. C., quoted, 82.
Harrison, Benjamin (1833–1901), 200.
Harrison, William H. (1773–1841), 45, 68.
Hartford, at Mobile Bay, 152.
Hawaii (hah-wī'ee), annexed, 225.
Hayes, Rutherford B. (1822–1893), 203.
Hayne, Robert T. (1791–1839), 97.
Henry, Patrick (1736–1799), 93.
Hobson, Richard P. (1870–), 211.
Homestead act, 190.
Hooker, Joseph (1814–1879), 135, 149.
Hospitals, in Civil War, 140.
House of Representatives, 11.
Hull, Isaac (1773–1843), 38.
Hull, William (1753–1825), 37.

Idaho, admitted, 191.
Illinois, admitted, 91.
Immigration, 238.
Impressment of seamen, 34.
Independence Hall, 260.

Indiana, admitted, 91.
Indians, Carson and the, 184.
in Louisiana Territory, 29.
in West, 191.
In-trep'id, 32.
Inventions of early days, 60.
Iowa, admitted, 92.
Iron mines, 252.
Island No. 10, captured, 134.

Jackson, Andrew (1767–1845), general, 47, 65.
home, picture, 67.
President, 67, 97.
Jackson, Thomas J. (1824–1863), 130.
Jamestown, and slavery, 78.
centennial, 277.
Jefferson, Thomas (1743–1826), 19, 25, 93.
Johnson, Andrew (1808–1875), 165.
Johnston, Albert S. (1803–1862), 134.
Johnston, Joseph E. (1807–1891), 127, 128.
Johnstown flood, 198.

Kansas-Nebraska law, 102.
Kentucky, admitted, 91.
in Civil War, 122.
settled, 55, 179.
Kentucky Road, 180.
Key, Francis Scott (1780–1843), 46.
Klondike gold fields, 194.
Ku-Klux-Klan, 170.

Labor, Department of, 232.
La-drone' Islands, 220.
Lawrence, James (1781–1813), 42.
Lawrence, Perry's flagship, 43.
Lee, Richard H. (1732–1794), 260.
Lee, Robert E. (1807–1870), 129.
at Gettysburg, 147.
carries war into North, 131, 135.
farewell to soldiers, 156.
Leopard, 35.
Lev'ees, Mississippi, broken, 234.
Lewis, Meriwether (1774–1809), 29.
Lewis and Clark Expedition, 29.
Libby prison, 163.
"Liberator," The, 94.
Liberty, Statue of, 264.

Lincoln (link'un), Abraham (1809–1865), 105.
and Emancipation Proclamation, 135.
and secession, 110.
and *Trent* Affair, 123.
assassinated, 159.
birth of, 105.
call for troops, 119.
childhood of, 180.
debate with Douglas, 106.
dedicates Gettysburg battlefield, 148.
elected President, 107, 153.
funeral of, 161.
inaugurated, 111.
statue of, picture, 167.
Longfellow, quoted, 278.
Lookout Mountain, battle of, 149.
Louisiana, admitted, 91.
Louisiana Territory, and slavery, 92.
purchased, 27.
Louisville, 151.
Lumbering, 248.

McClellan, George B. (1826–1885), 128, 153.
Macdonough, Thomas (1783–1825), 45.
McDowell, Irvin (1818–1885), 127.
Macedonian, 41.
McKinley, William (1843–1901), 231, 275.
Machinery and manufacturing, 63.
Madison, Dolly, 45.
Madison, James (1751–1836), 9, 37.
Maine, admitted, 92.
Maine, destroyed, 205, 206.
Manila, schoolhouse, 223.
Manila Bay, battle of, 208.
Maryland, Lee in, 146.
loyal in Civil War, 122.
Mason and Sli'dell, 123.
Match, sulphur, invented, 61.
Max-i-mil'i-an, in Mexico, 174.
Meade, George G. (1815–1872), 147.
Memorial Day, 166.
Merrimac, Hobson and the, 211.
Merrimac and *Monitor*, 124.
Mexico, civil war in, 173.
war with United States, 71.
Mexico, city of, taken, 72.
Michigan, admitted, 92.

Miles, Nelson A. (1839–), 193.
Mining, 251.
Mint, first, 17.
Mississippi, admitted, 91.
Mississippi River, and steamboat, 53.
  bridge over, 189.
  floods on, 234.
  in Civil War, 132, 148.
Missouri, admitted, 92.
  in Civil War, 122.
Missouri Compromise, 92, 102.
Mo-bile' Bay (mo-beel'), battle of, 152.
Mohawk valley, 55.
Money, paper, in Civil War, 144, 173.
Monitor, 124.
Monroe, James (1758–1831), 51.
Monroe Doctrine, 66.
  and England, 200.
  and Mexico, 173.
Montana, admitted, 191.
Montgomery, Confederate capital, 118.
Mon-ti-cel'lo, picture, 26.
Morse, Samuel F. B. (1791–1872), 60.
Mount Vernon, 4, 13.

Napier, J. T., quoted, 219.
Napoleon, and Louisiana Territory, 28.
  and steamboat, 52.
Napoleon III, and Mexico, 173.
National Pike, 56.
Naval cannon, picture, 32.
Navy, in Civil War, 123.
  in Spanish War, 207–213, 217.
  in War of 1812, 35.
  in War with Tripoli, 31.
Nebraska, admitted, 189.
New Hampshire, ratifies Constitution, 12.
New Mexico, admitted, 234.
New Orleans, battle of, 47.
  captured, 132.
  in Louisiana Territory, 27.
  opened to largest steamers, 189.
New York city, and Erie Canal, 55.
  draft riots in, 141.
  life in, 239–245.
  made capital, 14.
  newspaper in, 59.
Newspapers, early, 59.
Niagara, Perry's flagship, 44.
Non-intercourse act, 36.
Norfolk, and blockade, 124.
North, abolition in, 93.
  and Fugitive Slave Law, 99.
  and right of nullification, 99.
  at close of Civil War, 171.
  attitude of, towards secession, 117.
  effects of war on, 139.
  soldiers of, 164.
North Carolina, and slavery, 85.
  migration from, 55, 179.
North Dakota, admitted, 191.
North Pole, discovered, 234.
Northmen, boat of, picture, 266.
Northwest Territory, 5, 37, 43, 90.
Nul-li-fi-ca'tion, 96.

Ogden, and the railroad, 188.
Ohio, admitted, 91.
  and Erie Canal, 55.
Oklahoma, admitted, 234.
Olympia, Dewey's ship, 209.
Omaha, and the railroad, 187.
Ordinance of 1787, 5, 90.
Oregon, battleship, 228.
Oregon Country, 69.

Panama Canal, 228.
Paper money, Confederate, 144.
  United States, 173.
Paris, Treaty of, 2, 3.
Parker, Theodore (1810–1860), 94.
Parties, political, begin, 19.
Pear'y (peer'y), Robert E. (1856– 234.
Pen-in'su-lar campaign, 128.
Pennsylvania, coal found in, 58.
  migration from, 55.
  strike in, 232.
Perry, Oliver H. (1785–1819), 43.
Petersburg, 155.
Philadelphia, exposition, 259.
  Federal convention, 7.
  made national capital, 16.
  ovation to Washington, 14.
Philadelphia, cruiser, 32.
Philippines, acquired, 220.
  in Spanish war, 207, 208.
  scene in, picture, 224.
Phillips, Wendell (1811–1884), 94.

Pierce, Franklin (1804–1869), 105.
Pikes Peak, gold at, 190.
Pinckney, Charles C. (1746–1825), 20.
Pioneers, 55, 105, 180.
Pirate, Tripolitan, picture, 31.
Pittsburgh, steel center, 246.
Plantation life, 80.
Political parties begin, 19.
Polk (pōk), James K. (1795–1849), 68, 105.
Pope, John (1822–1892), 131.
Porto Rico, acquired, 220.
Prison life, 162.
Proclamation of Emancipation, 135.
Pueb'lo (pweb'), founded, 191.

"Quaker guns," 128.

Railroads, early, 56.
  first continental, 187.
Railroad train, in 1831, picture, 58.
Ranches, 255.
Rap-i-dan' River, 153.
Read, T. B., quoted, 154.
Reaper, invented, 61.
Reaper and thresher, picture, 254.
Re-con-struc'tion, 166.
Red Cross Society, 218.
Republican party, 177.
Reynolds, John F. (1820–1863), 147.
Rhode Island, ratified Constitution, 12.
Richmond, abandoned, 156.
  capital of Confederacy, 156.
  "on to Richmond," 127.
Rio Grande (ree'o grahn'dā), boundary, 72.
Riots, draft, 141.
Roosevelt (ro'ze-velt), Theodore (1858–), 231, 274.
Rosecrans (ro'ze-cranz), William S. (1819–1898), 149.
Russia, and Alaska, 193.
  and Monroe Doctrine, 67.
Ryan, Father, quoted, 130.

Sacramen'to, and the railroad, 187.
St. Louis, bridge at, 189.
  exposition at, 273.
Salute to flag, 223.
Sampson, William T. (1840–1902), 211.
San Francisco, earthquake, 234.
  exposition at, 277.
  picture, 186.
San Juan (hwahn), taken, 216.
Santiago (sahn-tee-ah'go), 211, 219.
Savannah, taken by Federals, 152.
Schley (shlī), Winfield S. (1839–1911), 211.
Scott, Dred, 103.
Scott, Winfield (1786–1866), 72.
Seaman, American, picture, 35.
Secession, question of, settled, 169.
Sem'i-nole Indians, 65.
Senate, 11, 89.
Seven Days' battles, 131.
Shannon, 42.
Shen-an-do'ah valley, 130, 153.
Sher'i-dan, Philip H. (1831–1888), 149, 154, 192.
Sherman, William T. (1820–1891), 149.
Shi'loh, battle of, 134.
Sitting Bull, 192.
Slavery, abolished, 167.
  and cotton, 85.
  forbidden in Northwest Territory, 6.
  importation, 90.
  in America, 78.
  in Constitution, 85, 89.
  origin of, 77.
Slaves, gangs, 83.
  life of, 80.
  song, 82.
Soldier, American, picture, 214.
  Confederate, picture, 142.
  Spanish, picture, 215.
  Union, picture, 140.
South, after the Civil War, 171.
  and Memorial Day, 168.
  and prisoners of war, 164.
  plans of, 116.
South Carolina, and nullification, 97.
  and slavery, 83, 85.
  secedes, 107.
South Dakota, admitted, 191.
Spain, and Cuba, 205.
  and Florida, 65.
  and Monroe Doctrine, 66.
  and slavery, 78.
  war with, 207.
Spanish blockhouse, picture, 216.

Spanish officer, picture, 215.
Spinning wheel, picture, 62.
Spoils system, 68.
Springfield, Ill., home of Lincoln, 161.
Stanford, Le'land (1824–1893), 188.
"Star Spangled Banner," 46.
State rights, 96.
Statue of Liberty, 264.
Steamboat, first, 52.
Steam engine, 51.
Steel manufacture, 246.
Stephenson, George, 56.
Stowe (sto), Harriet B. (1812–1896), 101.
Strike, coal, 232.
Supreme Court, 12.

Taft, William H. (1857–), 231.
Tariff, 16, 199.
Taylor, Zachary (1784–1850), 71, 105.
Telegraph, Morse and the, 60.
Telephone, 262, 268.
Tennessee, admitted, 91.
  in Civil War, 149.
  settled, 55.
Texas, admitted, 71, 92.
  annexed, 70.
  independent, 69.
Thames (temz), battle of the, 45.
Thomas, George H. (1816–1870), 149.
Thompson, W. H., quoted, 156.
Threshing machine, 61.
"Times," London, quoted, 41.
Treaty, 2, 3, 47, 72, 220.
  1783, 2, 3.
  1814, 47.
  1848, 72.
  1898, 220.
Trent affair, 123.
Trenton, ovation to Washington at, 14.
Tripoli, War with, 31.
Tyler, John (1790–1862), 68.

"Uncle Tom's Cabin," 101.
Underground Railway, 101.
Union soldier, picture, 140.
United States, 41.
Utah, admitted, 191.

Van Buren, Martin (1782–1862), 68
Van Dyke, Henry, quoted, 257.
Ven-e-zue'la (zwee') dispute, 200.
Ve'ra Cruz (vā'rah kroos'), taken, 72
Vermont, admitted, 91.
Vicksburg, 145, 148.

Wagner, composes march, 260.
War, Civil, 115.
  of 1812, 37.
  with Mexico, 71.
  with Spain, 207.
Washington, city, burning of, 45.
  made capital, 16.
Washington, state, admitted, 191.
Washington, George (1732–1799), 1, 2.
  and slavery, 93.
  autograph, 15.
  death of, 19.
  elected President, 13.
  foreign policy, 18.
  inaugurated, 14.
  in Federal Convention, 7.
  in Revolution, 2.
Watt, James, 51.
Webster, Daniel (1782–1852), 97.
Westward movement, 55, 177.
Wey'ler (wā'lĕr), General, 205.
Wheat farms, 253.
Wheeler, General (1836–1906), 216.
Whig party, 68, 105.
Whitney, Eli (1765–1825), 85.
Whittier, quoted, 94, 260.
Wilderness, battle in the, 153.
Wilderness Road, 180.
Wilkes (wilks), Charles (1798–1877), 123.
Wilson, Woodrow (1856–), 232.
Woman suffrage, 231.
Wright, Orville (1871–), 233.
Wright, Wilbur (1867–1912), 233.
Wyoming, admitted, 191.
  and woman suffrage, 231.

X-ray photograph, picture, 275.

Yukon gold fields, 193.

ADVERTISEMENTS

AMERICA FIRST

By JASPER L. McBRIEN, A. M., School Extension Specialist for the United States Bureau of Education, Washington, D. C., and formerly State Superintendent of Public Instruction of Nebraska.

TO INSTILL patriotism into the hearts of the rising generation is one of the greatest privileges of every school teacher. For it is chiefly to the teachers of America that the duty comes of amalgamating into one loyal, patriotic whole all the children of this country, whether they are the offspring of parents who were born here or of parents who come from other lands. Material which the teacher can definitely work toward this end is necessary and in this new book, "America First," this need is adequately met.

¶ The chief feature of the book is an original dramatization of the events of the Continental Congress of 1776; in addition, there are numerous and famous patriotic speeches and orations, songs and poems. All of this material is excellent for use in eighth grades and high schools.

¶ Dr. A. E. Winship in the *Journal of Education*, writes of this book as follows: "In 'America First,' Mr. McBrien has surely made the book of the hour in the true Americanism and the lofty patriotism that it teaches. Every student of current events must see the imperative need for such instruction. Before the American people realized it the European war had erected a Tower of Babel in our midst and we found ourselves in a confusion of tongues on Old-World problems. The purpose of this book is to rebaptize all with the love of our own country, revise American ideals and make 'America First' the national slogan of every man, woman and child under the stars and stripes.*** Never was there such an opportune time for the universal use, in school and out, of such a book as Mr. McBrien's 'America First.'"

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

ESSENTIALS OF ENGLISH

By HENRY CARR PEARSON, Principal, and MARY FREDERIKA KIRCHWEY, Instructor, both of Horace Mann School, Teachers College, Columbia University.

TWO BOOKS IN THREE EDITIONS

FIRST BOOK. For Fourth, Fifth and Sixth Grades
New Terminology Edition
New York State Edition

SECOND BOOK. For Seventh and Eighth Grades
New Terminology Edition
New York State Edition

THIS series is distinguished by the careful attention paid to the little as well as to the big things; the happy combination of inductive and laboratory methods; and the skillful organization and interrelation of the lessons.

In the First Book prominence is given to both oral and written work of a varied character. Extensive use is made of selections from literature, which contain the facts to be taught, and serve as models for the pupil to imitate. The principles of grammar are presented in their natural relations, and emphasized by ample drill. The picture studies are intended to be employed in cultivating the pupil's imagination as well as in training his power of observation.

The Second Book is divided into two parts, — grammar and composition, which are designed to be studied together. Here also the principles of grammar are developed inductively. Practice on correct forms often misused takes the place of exercises in false syntax. The abundant and varied exercises afford training in constructive ability as well as drill on forms. The subject of composition is considered in its larger units, and accompanied by many practical exercises. The models are within the pupil's experience and interest.

The New Terminology Edition follows the recommendations of the "Joint Committee on Grammatical Nomenclature." The New York State Edition meets the requirements of the State Education Department, and contains all the selections specified for study and memorizing.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

HUNT'S COMMUNITY ARITHMETIC

By BRENELLE HUNT, Principal of the Training School Department, State Normal School, Bridgewater, Mass. Price,

THIS arithmetic is intended as a supplementary book for the upper elementary grades and the junior high school. For pupils who have become acquainted with the fundamental operations and need to learn how to apply these operations in actual life this book offers definite training in the economic activities of the average community. It shows the pupil how to make practical use in factory, office, store, or bank, of the arithmetical principles he has learned.

¶ Each lesson, or series of lessons, deals with a single line of everyday work and gives enough practice to secure an intelligent understanding of that business. The lessons are presented from the point of view of the people doing the work and reflect actual business conditions. The work of a clerk in a grocery store, a meat market, or a dry goods store; problems in heating and lighting, the labor and problems involved in poultry keeping, carpentry and building and practical exercises in household expenses and accounts are some of the kinds of work in which the pupil is drilled.

¶ Special attention is given to the subjects that are taken up for the first time. At every stage, the pupil's mental equipment has been duly considered, and the gap between the known and the unknown has most carefully been bridged. In many cases, guide questions lead the pupil to an understanding of what he is to do. The numerous line cuts and halftones also help to clear up any possible difficulties.

¶ This book not only makes for efficiency in the ordinary trade operations but it also trains the pupil to be careful in his own expenditures and to appreciate the value of accuracy.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 011 527 197 0